Petre Armonicas , , , , ) ) <u>OR</u> ( ( ( ( ) . I Treatise on the Composition of MUS (ICK, E) CoIn Three Books; With an Introduction, on the HISTORS; and PROGRESS of MUSICK, from it's beginning to this Time, Mitten in Italian by GIORGIO ANTONIOTTO, Translated into English? London P; Printed by John Johnson in Cheapside



#### LIBRARY UNIV. OF NORTH CAROLINA

# SUBSCRIBERS NAMES.

A.

DR. Arne. Mr. Avifon of Newcastle. Mr. Francis Ashbey. Mr. Allen, Organist of Southwell.

#### B.

Henry Bridgman, E/q;
Mrs. Bridgman.
John Bagnal, E/q;
Robert Bell, E/q;
Barnard, E/q;
Captain Thomas Bourne.
Rev. Mr. Bugg.
Rev. Mr. Bowman.
Rev. Mr. Brailsford.
Dr. Boyce, Organist and Composer to bis Majesty's Band of Musick.
Mr. Butler, Organist of St. Margaret's, Westminster.
Mr. Burton, 2 Books.

Mr. Charles Burney.

Mr. Thomas Bower.

Mr. Bersanti.

#### C.

Robert Copley, Efq; Rev. Mr. Cole. Mr. Cooke, Master of the Choiristers, and one of the Gentlemen of the Choir of Westminster.

Mr. Cox, of the Gentlemen of his Majefly's Chapel Royal.

#### D.

Mr. Dodd. Mr. Thomas Saunders Dupuis.

#### F.

Mils Ford.

YF 781.61 Ab35ax

NUSIC

#### G.

Rev. Mr. Gifborne, late Prebendary of Durham. Rev. Mr. Graham, Fellow of King's-College, Cambridge. Mr. Gardiner. Mr. Garth, of Durham. Mr. Gladwin.

#### H.

John Hewett, E/q; Mrs. Hewett. Rev. Mr. Hewett. John Hawkins, Esq; Charles Grave Hudson, E/q; Francis Hurt, Esq; —— Hutchinfon, Efq; of Chrift's College, Cambridge. Mrs. Hallows. Rev. Mr. Hallows. Dr. Hayes, Professor of Musick at Oxford. Mr. John Hutchinfon. Mr. Hargrave. Mr. Samuel Howard, Organist of St. Brides and St. Clements-Danes. Mr. Herletine, Organist at Durham. Mr. Hawdon, Organist at Hull.

#### İ.

Dr. Johnson, of Loughborough. Mr. John Johnson, 6 Books.

#### L.

Her Grace the Dutchefs of Leeds. Rev. Mr. Ludlam, Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Rev. Mr. Lobb, Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. Mr. Layland, Organish of Chefterfield.

#### M.

Charles Mellifh, Efq; Rev. Mr. Mafon. Rev. Mr. Mudge. Mr. Alexis Magito. Mr. Miller, Organist of Doncaster.

Dr.

#### SUBSCRIBERS NAMES.

Dr. Nares, Organist and Composer to his Majesty, and Master of the Children of his Majesty's Chapel Royal.

Mr. Neville, of Jefus College, Cambridge.

P.

Robert Price, E/q; Miss Plumtree. Rev. Mr. Pixell. Rev. Mr. Pegge. Samuel Pegge, E/q; Mr. Porter. Signor Pasqualino. Signor Pafferini.

#### R.

Dr. Ridlington, Fellow of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, and Profeffor of Civil Law. Dr. Randall, Profeffor of Mufic at Cambridge. Thomas Robinson, Esq; of Christ's College, Cambridge. Mr. Rogers, Organist of Briftol.

Mr. Rayner, Organist of Lincoln.

#### S.

Earl of Scarborough. Countels of Scarborough. Hon. Charles Fitzroy Scudamore, E/q; Sir George Saville, Bart. 20 Books. Gervase Scroope, Ejq; Robert Sutton, E/q; Miss Arabella Sutton. Rev. Dr. Smith, Master of Trinity College, Cambridge. Rev. Mr. Skynner, Public Orator of the Univerfity of Cambridge.

#### w.

The Hon. Mr. Ward, 2 Books. Benedict Willis, Efq; Rev. Mr. Wright. Mrs. Wright Rev. Mr. Wheeler. Mr. Weideman. Mr. John Worgan, M. B. Mr. Wife, Organist at Nottingham. Mr. Wainwright, Organist at Manchester. Mr. Ward, Bookfeller at Sheffield.

#### 

#### ERRATA.

PAG. 12, at the begining of line 3, for Melody read Harmony.

Pag. 14, line 10, for Lais read Laxis.

Pag. 32, Example vii. for Plate 8, read 9.

Pag. 40, line 7, of Article v. for as the falle fifth, read has the falle fifth. Pag. 48, for Article iv. read iii. Pag. 72, line 5, add, after descending continually, by fifths. Pag. 82, Article v. for *fame* read *fome*.

Rev. Mr. Shepherd, Fellow of Chrift's College, Cambridge.

Mr. Stockdale, of Emanuel College, Cambridge.

Rev. Mr. Stacey.

Mr. Savage, Gentleman of his Majesty's Chapel Royal, and Almoner of St. Paul's Cathedral. Mr. John Chriftopher Smith.

John Smith, M. D. of St. Mary Hall, Oxford.

Mr. Stanley, Organist of the Temple and St. Andrew's.

Mr. Scamadine.

Mr. Francis Sharpe.

Mr. Sharpe.

Mr. Benjamin Steele.

#### Т.

Dr. Robert Taylor. Edward Toms, E/q; Mr. Turner. Mr. Tiffington, 2 Books.

V.

Mr. John Valentine, of Leicester.

# CONTENTS.

| The full Greek Distance Suffern   |       |             |
|---|-------|-------------|
| I be fill Olce Diatome Officia  |       | 3           |
| Its Divion into the Tetrachord Conjoint   |       | 3           |
| The greatest immoveable Greek System  |       | 4           |
| Its Division into five Tetrachords  |       | 5           |
| The fifteen Modes of Aristoxenes  |       | 7           |
| Diverse Opinions of Authors in regard to the Modes  |       | 8           |
| Of the Enarmonic, Diatonic, and Cromatic Genera, with their respective Colours  |       | 9           |
| The Addition of the four Greek Modes to the Cantos of his Church of Milan, by St. Ambrole   | j     | 10          |
| The Changement of the Greek Letters into Roman, by Boetius  | 161   | d.          |
| And afterwards restained by Pope Gregory the Great  |       | II<br>• ,   |
| Four more Greek Modes introduced by the Jame Pope   | - 101 | <i>id</i> . |
| The Division of the above eight Modes into Aukalic, and Plagel  | 101   | <i>ia</i> . |
| The Reformation of the Greek immoveable great system, by Guido Aretino  |       | 12          |
| The Fundamention of Guido's Suftan digidad by for Hangeborde infrad of Tatracharde  | ih.   | 14<br>; j   |
| The chose Sullables applied to the Herachords in their Order upon the I aft-hand for the Help of                                      | the   |             |
| The above Symples applied to the Thexachords in their Order apon the Left-hand for the Arcip of<br>Moments in the Prostice of Singing | 1100  | T ~         |
| The Introduction of Harmony by the lame Guido   |       | 15          |
| The Continuation of the Progress of Mulic till now  |       | 10          |

# BOOK I.

CHAP. I. Of Mufic in general.

| Art | I. 7       | HE Definition of Music HE     | Page     | 21  |
|-----|------------|-------------------------------|----------|-----|
| •   | II.        | The general Division of Music | <u> </u> | 22  |
|     | III.       | Of Melody, and its Division   | ;        | ib. |
|     | IV.        | Of Harmony                    | 7        | ib. |
|     | <b>v</b> . | Of the Division of Harmony    | <u> </u> | ib. |

### CHAP. II. Of Mufical Sounds.

| Art. | I. THE     | Definition  | of musical  | Sounds –   |         | <u> </u> |        | Pag | 23            |
|------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|---------|----------|--------|-----|---------------|
|      | II. Of     | the Numb    | er of music | al Sounds  |         |          |        | 3   | <i>ib</i> .   |
|      | III. Of th | e different | Intervals b | etwixt the | e eight | original | Sounds |     | • <i>ib</i> . |

#### CHAP. III.

Art. I. OF the new Modern general System of Sounds \_\_\_\_\_ Page 25 II. Of the various Names to the different Intervals of the above general System of Sounds ibid.

### CHAP. IV.

| Art. | I.  | OF the general Division of the general System of Sounds, from which arise the Consonant |    |
|------|-----|---|----|
|      |     | System of Progression, or as commonly called Modulation Page                            | 27 |
|      | II. | . Of two Harmonic Movements added to the above Confonant System of Progression          | 29 |
|      | Hf  | 1. Of the Division of the fundamental Progression arising from the above System         | 30 |

#### CHAP. V.

| Art. | I. O   | F the | Harmonic     | Division   | of th | be System | of | Sounds, | from             | whence           | arises t | be Harn | nonia | С  |    |
|------|--------|-------|--------------|------------|-------|-----------|----|---------|------------------|------------------|----------|---------|-------|----|----|
| Χ.   |        | Syfte | m of Comb    | ination of | Soun  | ıds —     |    |         |                  |                  |          |         | Pa    | ġe | 31 |
|      | II. Of | the D | ivision of ( | Combinatio | n of  | Sounds -  |    |         | tij naven Mastra | - <b>1940</b> 33 |          |         | • p   |    | 33 |
| 15   | 1 A 1  |       |              |            |       |           |    |         |                  |                  |          | С       | H     | A  | Ρ. |

#### CONTENTS.\*

## CHAP. VI.

| Art. | I. OF the different Scales  | -Page 24 |
|------|---|----------|
|      | II. Of the principal natural Scale  | 35       |
|      | III. Of its relative Scales   | ib.      |
|      | IV. Of the artificial Scale, commonly called the Minor Mode                   | 38       |
| •    | V. Of its relative Scales   | 40       |
|      | VI. Of Scales of Transposition by the Consonant Movement                      | 41       |
| *    | VII. Of the Scales transposed from the natural Scale                          | ib.      |
|      | VIII. Of transposing the artificial Scale                                     | 42       |
|      | IX. Of the Number of Scales arifing from the Transposition                    | ib.      |
|      | X. Of the different Scales of Melody in their different Keys                  | 43       |
|      | XI. Of the divers Positions of the Unison, respectively to the different Keys | ib.      |

BOOK II.

Containing the fundamental Contrapoint, by which the following Harmonic Code is composed --- Page 45

# PART I. The Harmonic Code.

CHAP. I. Containing the Confonant Movement by defcending a fifth Low, or a fourth High, commonly called the Skip of Cadence.

| Art. | I.:( | <b>7</b> F the Confonant Combination ————————————————————————————————————          | 46  |
|------|------|--|-----|
|      | ÌI.  | Of the Simple Harmonic Combination   | 47  |
|      |      | Of the Manner of doubling the two Confonants, the Fifth and Octave                 | ib. |
| •    | III. | Of the Compound Combination, and First with the Seventh                            | 48  |
|      |      | Of adding the Fifth and Octave   | ib. |
|      |      | Of the Combination of the Ninth  | ib. |
|      |      | Of introducing the Ninth instead of the Ostave                                     | 49  |
|      |      | Of joining the Octave to the above Canon   | ib. |
|      |      | Of paffing from one Discord to another   | 50  |
|      | IV.  | Of full Combination  | ib. |
|      | v.   | Of the Seventh and Ninth passing in another Discord, called Falses of Propositions | 51  |
|      |      | How to refolve the Seventh and Ninth in afcending                                  | ib. |
|      | VI.  | Of uncommon Combination, as Falses by Anticipation                                 | 52  |
| 1-   | VII  | . Of Falfes by Change, as they are called by the Italian Masters                   | 53  |

#### CHAP. II. Containing the imperfect Confonant Skip of Cuide.

| Art. I. | OF the Conformant Combination Page    | 54   |
|---------|---------------------------------------|------|
| 11      | L. Of the simple Harmonic Combination | 10 . |
|         | Of doubling the two Confonants        | 55   |
| II      | H. Of the Compound Combination        | ib.  |
| I       | V. Of Anticipations                   | ib.  |

#### CHAP. III. Containing the perfect Auxiliar Skip of Third low.

| Art. | I.<br>II. |  | above Skip is not<br>be fimple and con | properly fundamen | al in continual Progression | Page 56<br>ib. |
|------|-----------|--|--|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
|------|-----------|--|--|-------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|

CHAP. IV. Containing the fame Auxiliar Skip joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence.

| Art. I. | N fimple Combination |              | Page 57 |
|---------|----------------------|--------------|---------|
| II.     | In compound Harmony  | three Canons | 58      |

# \* C'ONTENTS.

CHAP. V. Containing the fame Skip joined with the imperfect Skip of Guide.

TWO Canons in fimple Harmony \_\_\_\_\_ Page 58

CHAP. VI. Containing the imperfect Auxiliar Skip of Third high.

CHAP. VII.

THE same joined with the perfect Skip of Guide \_\_\_\_\_

— Page 60

- Page 59 ib.

CHAP. VIII.

OF divers Combinations with all the four Skips fundamental -

- Page 60

# PART II. Of the Harmonic Code.

CHAP. I. Containing the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence.

| Art. | I. ( | <b>OF</b> transposing the Scale in all Semitones, only in Consonant Combination — Page     | 63  |
|------|------|--|-----|
|      | II.  | The fame Transposition with Harmonic Combination   | 64  |
|      | III. | With Compound Combination  | ib. |
|      |      | The fame with the Ninth  | 65  |
|      |      | Of transposing the artificial Scale with Simple Combination                                | ib. |
|      | IV.  | The fame Transposition with Seventh  | ib. |
|      |      | Of the fame with Ninth instead of the Eighth   | ib. |
| - 7  | V.   | Of the fame Transposition in a better Manner   | 66  |
|      | TIT  | Of the fact the national Coale swith the Defaution of the Compound Compinations a Coordina | 6-  |

I. Of transposing the natural Scale with the Resolution of the Compound Combination ascending 67

CHAP. II.

OF transposing the natural and artificial Scale by the imperfect Consonant Skip of Guide ---- Page 68

#### CHAP. III.

OF transposing the two principal Scales by perfect auxiliar Skip of Third low, in continual Progression \_\_\_\_\_ Page 68

# CHAP. IV.

| Art. | I. ( | <b>OF</b> the Transposition by the same auxiliar Skip, joined with the Skip of Cadence — Page<br>Of the Transposition of the artificial Scale as above | 69<br><i>ib</i> . |
|------|------|--|-------------------|
|      |      | Of the same Transposition, but the Bass skipping by major and minor Thirds in the natural  |                   |
|      |      | Way<br>Of the Transposition of the natural Scale with the same Combination, but with the   | 70                |
|      |      | fundamental Guide  | ib.               |
|      | 41   | The Manner of transposing the artificial Scale by the Jame Progression a Semitone higher   | <i>ib</i> .       |
|      | п.   | The fame as the above, only different in the Combination to the Skip of Cadence, which is<br>with Third major  | 10.<br>;h         |
|      |      | Of the same Transposition of the artificial Scale by both the above Skips  | 71                |
|      | III. | Of the same Transposition and Progression, but in compound and full Combination  | ib.               |

#### CONTENTS,

#### CHAP. V.

#### Art. I. OF transposing the natural Scale by the above auxiliar Skip of Third low, joined with the Skip of the Guide Page 72 II. Of transposing both the natural and artificial Scales, as they happen in their natural Order,

by the above two Skips. \_\_\_\_\_ 73

#### CHAP. VI.

#### Art. I. OF the Transposition by the imperfect auxiliar Skip of Third high, joined with the Skip of Cadence \_\_\_\_\_ Page 73

II. The fame Transposition with compound Harmony \_\_\_\_\_\_ ib. The Manner of dividing the Octave, in four and three Parts, with the same Progression ib.

# CHAP. VII.

OF the Transposition by the above auxiliar Skip, joined with the Skip of Guide \_\_\_\_\_ Page 74 Of transposing the natural Scale by the same auxiliar Skip ascending a major Third, joined with the same Skip of Guide \_\_\_\_\_ ib.

#### CHAP. VIII.

OF the Transposition of both Scales, by all fundamental Skips in compound and full Harmony Page 75

#### BOOK III.

#### CHAP. I.

| Arr.    | I o F figured Harmony Page  | 78 |
|---------|---|----|
| - 7+ 6. | I Of the different situation of the Bals in forward Harmon                  | ih |
|         | HI Of the Lagreen by the Def Sunce Lags in figure Intermony                 |    |
|         | 111. Of the Inversion by the Bajs Syncopes                                  | 79 |
|         | IV. Of varied and diminified Bals Notes                                     | 80 |
|         | V. Of fome equivocal Combination  | 82 |
|         | VI, VII. Of fome particular Inversion arising from the artificial Scale 83, | 84 |
| а –     | VIII. Of some irregular Combination in the artificial Scale                 | 36 |
|         | IX. Of the different Motions and Variations of the superior Parts           | 88 |

#### CHAP. II.

| Art. I. OF Composition in divers Parts Page            | e 90 |
|--|------|
| II. Of Fugues and Imitations                           | - 92 |
| III. The Manner of composing the Fugues and Imitations | - 93 |
| IV. Of composing Canons                                | - 95 |
| V. Of Cadences   | - 98 |
| VI. Of the Accent                                      | - 99 |

#### CHAP. III.

| Art. | I. 7             | THE Division of figurate Music Page       | 102   |
|------|------------------|---|-------|
| 1.   | II. <sup>4</sup> | Of vocal Music                            | ibid. |
|      | III.             | Of instrumental Music                     | 103   |
|      | IV.              | Of local Music, and first of facred Music | 104   |
|      | v.               | Of Theatrical Heroic Music                | 107   |
|      |                  | Of Comic Mulic                            | 108   |
|      | VI.              | Of Chamber Mulic                          | · 16. |

#### יושהי האביהה אד כאהוכאב באם אם אבינו

#### E R R Α T Α.

In the CONTENTS.

Line 13. for Aukatic, read Autentic. Chap. IV. Line 1. for General, read Confonant Division. Chap. VI. Line 6. for Page 41, read Page 40. Line 7. for ibid. read 41.

In BOOK II. Part I.

Art. V. Line 11. for Propositions, read Postpositions.

In BOOK II. Part II.

Chap. V. Line 4. for Page 73, read Page 72.

In BOOK III.

Chap. I. Line I. for Page 78, read 77. ----- Line 7. for Page 36, read 86.

In the INTRODUCTION.

Page 14. Line 10. for Lais, read Laxis.

In BOOK I. Chap. V.

Page 32. Line 26. for Plate 8, read Plate 9.

In BOOK I. Chap. VI.

Page 34. Line 11. for Noife, read Note.

Page 37. Line 20, read and the Indicative descending Seven Serves only, &c.

Page 39. Line 6. in the N. B. read, and it's transposed Scales.

Page 40. Line 13. for as, read has the falfe Fifth A Flat. Page 42. Line 6. from the Bottom, for Seven, read Five more of different, &c.

- Line 2. from the Bottom, for eighty, read eighteen Scales.

र्क से दर के से दर दर दर हो जी है

Page 47. Line 13. for F to B, read B to F. Page 48. Line 1. for Conformant, read Compound Combination.

Page 53. Line 7. from the Bottom, read First and Second Chorus.

Page 57. Line 12. for two, read true fundamental Baffe fubfift.

Page 72. Line 5, read descending continually by Fifths is contrary, &c.

Page 78. Line 24. omit Canon, and read Combination has no more.

Page 82. Art. V. read Of fome equivocal Combination.

Page 100. Line 36. for compacted, read divided in two Notes.





# DELL' ARTE ARMONICA.

#### Т H E

# INTRODUCTION;

#### CONTAINING

# An HISTORY of the PROGRESS of MUSIC to this Time.



ATURE hath provided all Animals with certain Inftincts, necessary both for their general and particular Prefervation. Brutes are limited to fimple Inftincts, by which they are wholly guided and directed. But Man is diftin-guifhed by the Gift of Reason, by which he is able to controul, regulate, and use his feveral Inftincts and Propensions, according to his Will and Pleafure. Moreover, there are implanted in him the Seeds (as it were) of feveral

ufeful and pleafant Arts, with the Power of cultivating and bringing them to Perfection.

One of these Seeds, and not the least conspicuous, is undoubtedly the Faculty of Singing, of which Music may be confidered as an Improvement; whose Business it is to chear the Mind, and to relieve it, not only from the Irksomeness of Idleness, the Gloom of Care, and the Fatigue of domeftic Employments; but likewife from the Power and Tyranny of our boifterous Passions, and many other Evils, which do but too often invade both the Mind and the Body, as the Hiftory of Mankind most plainly shews.

Thus we may, upon the best Ground in the World, affert, that Singing and Music are born with Man, are congenial, and even interwoven into his Frame and Constitution.

But then, as every one was endowed with a Propenfity and Genius peculiar to himfelf, and modell'd, as it were, according to the Singularity of his own Constitution, there would arife in the World an almost infinite Variety of Tastes and Opinions, agreeable to the different Genius and Temper of different Perfons and different Nations; and Singing and Mufic being differently purfued and cultivated, would at length be accommodated to the Tafte of every particular Country, and to the Turn of its Inhabitants.

Thus the Music of the Turks, is entirely different from ours. The People of Fez, Morocco, and other Parts of Africa, have again a different Kind, which to us, who are not accustomed to it, appears to be very rough and horrid; but it nevertheless is highly pleafing and entertaining to them.

Thus

Thus, among the feveral Nations of *Europe*, there are found different Manners of Singing. The *French*, *Polanders*, *Sicilians*, *Scotch*, and other People, have every one a certain Mode peculiar to their Idioms, and the Tafte of their Country; which must certainly proceed from their different Tempers and Conflictutions, owing perhaps in a great Measure to the different Climates in which they live. There is also a great Variety of Taftes and Opinions among the Inhabitants of the fame Country.

One Man is better pleafed with the brifk and lively, whilft another is more delighted with the grave and pathetic.

Mufic, like all other Arts, is fubject to the various Viciflitudes of beginning, improving, arriving at, what we may call, its perfect State, and afterwards decaying.

But of the different Epochas of the Improvements of Mufic, and the various Gradations by which that delightful Art hath arrived to its prefent State, we have in Truth but a very fcanty and imperfect Knowledge.

Sacred Hiftory informs us, that *Tubal*, the fixth Defcendant from *Adam*, was the Inventor of Wind Inftruments, from whence we may juftly infer, that thefe being contrived to imitate the human Voice, Singing muft before have arrived at fome Degree of Perfection.

From the fame Hiftory we learn, that in *Judea*, in the Time of King *David*, a great Number of Singers and Performers upon Harps, and other Inftruments, were employed in the Service of God; that therein were introduced both Pfalms and Hymns; *David*, the King, himfelf affifting in those Performances.

In Imitation of this, and indeed as a Proof of it, these very Psalms are used to this Day in the Offices of the Christian Church.

But all this implies no more, than that Mulic existed in those Times, and even was had in great Honour and Estimation: For no Mention is made when or how it was learned, nor how far the Art had proceeded; only we are affured, that the *fewish* Lyre was mounted with a confiderable Number of Strings, and that *David* was the best Artist of his Time; and was employed as such for the curing of his Predecessor, King Saul, of his Phrenzy, as appears from Samuel xvi.

All that from this Time (that is from the Age of King David) can be known, and that not without fome Confution, is, that Mufic had a new Epocha in Greece, where it began by Singing: That their first Poets recited their own Compositions, with a certain Manner of Expression, elevating and lowering the Voice, as the Subject required, by the Help of the Lyre, an Instrument furnished with three Strings in some Provinces, and in others with four, which were so disposed, as to proceed from the Grave to the Acute, after the Manner of a Scale, and were founded by the Touch of the Fingers, as the present Guitar, or Lute, is. From whence it follows, that the vocal Performances of this early Age, could be no more than simple and plain Recitative, after the Manner of the Orator, C. Gracchus, at Rome, who, according to the Testimony of Cicero, in his Treatife de Oratore, Book III. Sect. 60, made Use in speaking to the Public, not of a Lyre indeed, as mentioned above, but of the Sound of a simall Flute, which a Person, who stood privately behind him, held, and whenever he either such his Voice too low, or raifed it too high, he was by this Means, namely, by the Help of the Tone of this Instrument, recalled to the proper Pitch. According to fome, the like had been practifed before by Demosteres, in Greece.

But as the Voices of Men are not of an equal Pitch, as to the Grave and the Acute, the four Strings, which were affixed to the Lyre, were not fufficient for the Purpofe of every Voice; therefore they added to the former four, three other Strings, gradually rifing higher; by which Means, they were now able to produce feven different Sounds, proceeding from the the Grave to the Acute, as in the first Example, Plate I. These feven Strings were named, according to their Place, upon the Instrument, as follows.

The first was the most grave, and was called Hypate, which signifies the principal, or the most honourable.

The fecond, which was fomewhat more acute, was termed Parhypate, that is, the next to Hypate.

The third was called Lycanos, which is as much as to fay, that it was to be founded by the indicial Finger.

The fourth they called Mefe, becaufe it was in the Middle of the feven Strings.

The fifth was called Paramefe, which fignifies the next to the Mefe.

The fixth was termed Paranete, being next to the Nete, or laft String.

The feventh they called Nete, which fignifies the new or laft String; and this was the moft acute of all: For it was the Cuftom of thefe ancient Times, as it is at this Day, in Lutes, Violins, and other like Inftruments, to place the largeft, or Grave String, uppermoft, and fo defcend gradually to the fimalleft, or Acute, which was put at the inferior Part of the Inftrument.

The Degrees, or Intervals, between one Sound and another, were stilled Tones and Semitones; the Tones were divided into greater and lesser Tones, the common Measure of which was called a Comma; there being none of these Commas contained in the greater Tone, and eight in the lesser.

From the first Grave, or largest String, called Hypate, to the second String, Parhypate, they estimated the Distance to be a Semitone, confisting of five Commas.

From the fecond to the third String Lycanos, the Diftance was a greater Tone.

From the third to the fourth String, called Mefe, they counted the Diftance to be a Minor Tone.

From the fourth to the Paramele, or the fifth String, a Semitone.

From the fifth to the Paranete, or the fixth String, a greater Tone.

From the fixth to the feventh, or last String, a Minor Tone.

And thus those feven Strings made fix Intervals; two of the greater Tone, two of the leffer Tone, and two of a Semitone, as in the above-mentioned Example the first, Plate I.

Such was the first Scale of Sounds amongst the *Greeks*, which in their Language was called System, and corresponds with the modern Scale, beginning at B, and rising thus, C, D, E, F, G, A, excepting, that in the modern Scale, there is no Destination of the Tones into greater or leffer, but they are considered as being all equal.

This System of the Greeks was called by the Name of Tetrachord Conjunct, because it was constructed of two Diatessans, that is of two Fourths, each being composed of four Sounds in Sequence; so that the Sound which was the Acute, or highess Termination of the first Diatessans, terved for the first Grave Sound of the second; and both these Diatessans (at prefent called Fourths) had the Order of their respective Strings, equal in Point of Interval, or Distance.

For

For from the first Grave String, or Hypate, they reckoned a Semitone.

From the fecond to the third, a greater Tone.

And from this to the fourth, a leffer Tone; and, beginning from the fame fourth String, which by that Means came to be the first of the next Diatesfaron, the Distance between it and the fecond String was a Semitone, between the fecond and third a greater Tone, and between the third and fourth, or last String of the whole Tetrachord Conjunct, a leffer Tone. In short, just as it is feen in the Order of the above Scale, or System, which being divided in the Manner above-mentioned, formed two equal Intervals, the one Grave, and the other Acute, as it is described in the fecond Example, Plate I.

The above Division into Tetrachords, ferved to no other Purpose, but to enable the Ancients to transfer the first Diatessaron into the Place of the second; that is to fay, the four Grave Sounds into the four Acute, or the four Acute into the four Grave, for the Advantage of the Voice, as that was high or low. And the Lyre, when capable of these Transpositions, became a competent Regulator of different Voices in their different Pitch.

But as thefe Tones of the *Greeks* were effimated by the Comma, which was but an imaginary Meafure, and had no Relation to any Thing certain, fixed, and known, and confequently was liable to be underflood with more or lefs Latitude, the above Syftem, or Scale of feven Sounds, was found to be imperfect, and, as it is faid, was amended in the Time of *Pythagoras*. Probably one of their Singers, or Poets, which ever it was, vifited the School of *Pythagoras*, in *Italy*, and learned from him (who appears, from Hiftory, to have been the first that found out the Method of explaining, to the Human Underflanding, the Diftance or Diversity of Sounds, as they were high or low) that if one Sound was added to the feven contained in the above Scale, fuch added Sound, whether it were high or low, would be found, in respect of the others, perfectly confonant with that which was fartheft from it, whether high or low; and therefore in a Scale, which was to ferve for a System of Sounds, the Octave, or confonant Sound, ought neceffarily to be included; fince it would prove a fixed, fensible, and intelligent Termination of an Interval or Compafs, that included in it every possible Division of Sounds, the Differences of which, like Parts relative to a Whole, could only be determined by this Means.

Thus they added to the feven Strings, and at the Top of the Lyre, the deep String that was wanting, which became Confonant with that acute String, which was fartheft off; fo that the String called Hypate, which was before the deepeft, came now to be but the fecond deep String; and its Interval or Diftance from the faid String, which they called Proflambanomenos, that is to fay the added, was a greater Tone; and the String Nete, which was the Seventh in the former Scale, came to be the Eighth acute String, perfectly confonant with the Proflambanomenos, which was the deepeft in this their new Scale.

There fubfifted between these two Extremes of the Proslambanomenos, and the Nete, an Interval certain and distinct, which included in it the other fix Sounds of the Scale, every one at their proper Distance proportioned to the Whole; and in this Manner they improved their first System.

But, for the Information of those who are unskilled in Music, we shall give a short Explanation of that Interval, which by the *Greeks* was called Dia Pason, and by the modern Musicians the Octave, because it includes in it the whole Natural Scale of the Eight Primary Sounds of Music.

Every one knows, that any Sound whatfoever being given, another, and even many, may be given, that fhall be exactly fimilar to it, and neither higher or lower. But those, who have no Knowledge of Music, have not perhaps observed, that over and above those fimilar

4

fimiliar Sounds above-mentioned, which by Muficians are diffinguished by the Name of Unifons, an Infinity of other Sounds may be given, either higher or lower, which though they are not Unifons, and fimilar one with another, because they are higher or lower, yet they are confimilar; fo as they also seem to be only one Sound, though one be high and the other low, the higher being absorbed in the lower.

Of this any one may be fentible, by touching any Key of an Organ or Harpfichord, together with any other Key, at the Diftance of an Octave; he will find, that the Grave, or deep Sound, abforbs in a Manner the Acute, or high one, and that it renders it, as it were, undiftinguifhable, the Acute Sound ferving to no other Purpofe, but to ftrengthen and inforce the Grave, or deep Sound. With good Reafon, therefore, these confimilar Sounds, which are at the Diftance of an Octave, are called by Muficians confonant Sounds, to diftinguifh them from those which being perfectly fimilar, are called Unifons: And all the Sounds which are contained in the aforefaid Interval of the Octave, have in like Manner every one, whether higher or lower, their confonant Octave; for which Reason, not only the first Octave, but also all the others, are capable of being inforced *in infinitum*, both in Height and in Depth, by additional Sounds.

It is also found, that befide the two extreme Sounds of the Octave, the fifth of the eight Sounds of the Octave, becomes also confonant with the first deep Sound. This is proved by Trial on the Organ, for touch whatfoever Key you pleafe in the Stop, called Sefquialtera, in which Stop all the Keys are joined with their respective Fifths, the fifth Sound is fo closely united with its deeper Sound, that it cannot be diffinguished; and thus all the perfect Fifths, which confiss of feven Semitones, are confidered as confonant, tho' not fo perfectly as the Octave.

### We return now to the Hiftory of the Progress of Music in Greece.

As Nature, for our common Good, has implanted in the Breaft of Man, the Love of Glory, and the Defire of excelling in great Actions, and ufeful and pleafing Arts and Knowledge, it is no Wonder that the mufical Art, which fprang first in *Greece* from the emphatical Recitations of the Poets, acquiring afterwards, by Degrees, a greater Energy of Pronounciation, was improved into a Species of Singing, and at last into Melody, and spread itself in Progress of Time from Province to Province, but in different Manners, according to the Genius and Turn of the Inhabitants of the Country. From hence there arofe a Neceffity to increase continually the Number of the Strings of the Lyre; and moreover, new Instruments of Music, both of the Stringed and Wind Kind, were invented and introduced.

At length then to unite, and the better to diffinguish, all the Sounds which they had fucceffively introduced into their Lyre; a new System was established, and was called the greatest, and the unchangeable System; which was so termed, because it included, in their Opinion, every other lesser System, or Division whatsoever.

This Syftem confifted of a Scale of fixteen Sounds, which formed their Difdiapafon, or double Octave; that is, to their first Diapafon, or Octave of the eight Primary Sounds, there was joined another Octave, or eight Sounds, fimilar to the first, but higher, as in Example III. Plate I.

But as the first Scale of feven Strings was divided into two leffer Systems of four Strings each, which were named as above, the Tetrachords conjoined, from whence the deep String, called the Proflambanomenos, which was the deepst Note in the System, was excluded. So in this new greatest System, there was annexed three other Tetrachords: From whence this System came to be divided into five Tetrachords, the Note Proflambanomenos being likewife excluded. Example IV. Plate I.

The

The first of these five Tetrachords was called the Tetrachord Hypaton, the first String of which answering to the Note B natural, of our modern Scale, was named Hypate Hypaton, that is the Hypate of the Tetrachord Hypaton.

The fecond String of the fame Tetrachord, which corresponds to the Note C, in our Scale, was called Parhypate Hypaton.

The third String was named Lycanos Hypaton, which is the Note D, in our Scale.

The fourth String, which finished the first Tetrachord, they called Hypate Meson, because it ferved for the first String of the second Tetrachord, which was called Meson, at the same Time that it was the sourch String of the first Tetrachord, which String or Sound corresponds with our present E.

The fecond String of the fecond Tetrachord Meson, was called Parhypate Meson, which is the Note F, in our present Scale.

The third String was Lycanos Meson, and the fourth Mese, the same as G and A, in our first Scale.

Then followed the third Tetrachord, called Synemmenon, or conjoined, which, according to the Order and Nature of the two firft conjoined, ought to have the Diftance or Interval of a Semitone, from the firft to the fecond String; but as the faid laft String Mefe, which coincides with the Note A, is diftant a whole greater Tone from the next String, called Paramefe, which is our prefent Note B, they were obliged, in order to make the third Tetrachord unite with the former, in the fame Order of Tones, to divide the Interval betwixt the two Strings Mefe and Paramefe, by inferting a new Note, or Sound, between them, diftant a Semitone from the preceding String, and a greater Tone from the following Note higher; which greater Tone confifted of nine Commas, viz. five between Hypate and Parhypate, or from B to C, and four from B flat to B natural, (from which Division arofe the Diftinction of the greater and leffer Semitone) and the firft String of this Tetrachord, called Synemmenon, corresponding to A in the prefent Scale, was termed Mefe Synemmenon, and was diftant a greater Semitone from the fecond adjacent String, which was called Trite Synemmenon, corresponding to the prefent B flat.

The third String, which was diftant a greater Tone, was called Paranete Synemmenon, that is C; and,

The fourth String, Nete Synemmenon, was supposed to be distant a Minor Tone from the third. In this Manner was the third Tetrachord constructed.

To pass then to the other two Tetrachords, which were called disjoined, and made up the five, into which the greatest System was divided, they came next to the String Paramese, or B natural, which was separated from the String Mese, by the abovesaid new added String; and proceeding to the fecond String of the fourth Tetrachord, which was called Diazeugmenon (which fignifies disjoined) they called it Trite Diazeugmenon, it being distant a Semitone from the first String, and a greater Tone from the third, called Paranete Diazeugmenon, which was distant a lefter Tone from the fourth, called Netdiazeugmenon: This fourth String then served, according to the Order and Method of the other Tetrachords, for the first String of the fifth, or last Tetrachord, which was named Hyperbolæon, that is, excelling or exceeding; the second String of this was named Trite Hyperbolæon, the third Paranete Hyperbolæon, and the fourth Nete Hyperbolæon.

These two Tetrachords were nothing more than a Transposition of the two former, an Octave higher, or more acute, which corresponded, as has been faid, to the Notes B, C, D, E, and E, F, G, A, in our present Scale.

New, in the aforefaid Difpolition of the five Tetrachords of the Systema Maximum, or greateft System, we must observe, that the third conjoined Tetrachord is not fimilar to the others; for fince from the fecond String Trite Synemmenon, or B flat, inferted between Mefe and Paramefe, to the third String Paranete Synemmenon, or C, there is reckoned to be the Diftance of a greater Tone, therefore from Paranete Synemmenon, or C, to Nete Synemmenon, or D, there ought only to be a leffer Tone; whereas the Interval betwixt C and D, in the first and fourth Tetrachords, was calculated to be a greater Tone, and not a leffer. From whence it appears, that, from the Time that the greatest System was divided into the abovefaid Tetrachords, the Artists did no longer regard the Diffinction of the greater and leffer Tone, without which Diffinction the aforefaid Tetrachords were all five equally divided into two Tones, and a Semitone, in the fame-Manner as it was divided by the *Pythagoreans*.

But at this Time, and for fome Time after, the Ancients had no other Notes or Characters by which to diffinguifh and mark the Sounds of their Songs, but the above-mentioned Names, appropriated to the Strings of their Lyre: From whence it may be inferr'd, with the greateft Probability, that their Music confifted of nothing more than fimple Melody, in the Nature of Recitative, or rather of a melodious Utterance, Pronounciation, or Expression, purposely adapted to their poetical Compositions; and *Strabo* afferts, that the ancient Poets rehearsed their Works to the Sound of some Instrument, catching and inveigling their Auditors by that Artifice.

Therefore, diversifying one after another, this their first fimple Method, and introducing also a certain Species of Chanting, in the Manner of a Song, and this proceeding in divers Manners, according to the Difference of the Country, and Tastes of the Inhabitants, they, at length, in order to be able to give a Name to every Note which they were continually adding to their Instruments, changed the Names of the Strings into the Letters of their Alphabet, placing the first Letters to the gravest Sound, and the others in Sequence, proceeding from the gravest to the acutest.

But as the Science of Mulic received daily Improvement, fometimes in one Province, and fometimes in another, and from the public Places being introduced into Houfes or Palaces, Temples and Theatres, and that in different Taftes and Manners, according to the particular Genius of the Inhabitants of the feveral Provinces; from thence there arole 'a Variety in the Order of their Scales, the Polition or Places of the Sounds being by this greatly multiplied, and the Letters of the Alphabet not being fufficient to denominate all the different Places of every Sound, upon their Variation of Polition, they were obliged to increase the Signs or Notes, or the Names taken from the Alphabet, by turning the Letters to the Right Hand or to the Left, or placing them above or below, and adding befides, certain Points, and other Characters.

This Diversification of Modes was afterwards diftinguished by the Name of the Country, where each was principally used.

Ariftoxenus, who appears to have been the first that wrote regularly, and perhaps the best on the Subject of Music, distributed the different Methods of Singing into fisteen Modes, and these again into three different Positions, according to the different Parts of the human Voice. Five were called Principals, which he placed in the Middle; five others were called Collaterals, but graver; and the remaining five Collaterals, but acuter.

- The Principals in the Middle were the Doric, the Iastic or Ionic, the Phrygian, the *Æolic*, and the Lydian.

The five Collaterals on the Acute, or higher Part, were the fame, but were diffinguished by the Word Hyper, which fignifies above, that is, the Hyper *Doric*, the Hyper *Iastic*, the Hyper *Pbrygian*, the Hyper *Æolic*, and the Hyper *Lydian*. In the fame Manner to the Collaterals on the deep or grave Part, the Word Hypo was prefixed, meaning the inferior, as the Hypo Doric, Hypo Iaftic, &c.

These fifteen Modes were distant a Semitone one from another; the Diapason or Octave being divided into twelve Semitones, or Intervals, of thirteen Sounds, every Sound of the two Collaterals was distant from its respective principal, one Diatessann, that is to fay, a perfect fourth, confisting of five Semitones, as may be seen in Example V. Plate I. wherein the fisteen Modes are placed over the Names used in our present Scale, which correspond with the ancient Greek Scale, or Diapason, according to the Method of Aristoxenus.

Cafiodorus, writing to Boetius, fays, in the fecond Book of his Epistle, that the artificial Music has fifteen Modes, agreeing in this with Aristoxenus.

Euclid, who follows Ariftoxenus too, gives us but thirteen, at a Semitone's Diftance one from another; that is, he went not beyond the last Semitone of the Diapason, which he confidered, as being divided, according to the Doctrine of Aristoxenus, into twelve Semitones, and thirteen Sounds. He omitted the Hyper Æolic, and Hyper Lydian, placed by Aristoxenus amongst the high Collaterals, beyond the last high Note of the Diapason.

Cenforinus also makes Mention of those thirteen Modes.

Plato, fpeaking occasionally of those Modes, in the third Book of his Republic, reckons them fix; and in another Place, namely, in the Piece called Laches, he mentions only four.

Apuleius talks of the Æolic, the Iastic, the Lydian, the Phrygian, and the Doric.

Ariftides Quintilian mentions fix, the Doric, the Phrygian, the Iastic, the Lydian, the Mixolydian, and the Syntonolydian.

Julius Pollux reckons eight, Lucian four; and many, confidering Greece as divided into Doria, Æolia, and Ionia, and that these were its proper Bounds, have named only the Doric, the Æolic, and the Ionic.

Phutarch afferts, that the ancient Modes were no more than three, that is, the Doric, the Phrygian, and the Lydian.

Ptolomy, with whom agrees Boetius, confiders the Doric, the Phrygian and the Lydian, as Principals. The Hypo Dorian, the Hypo Phrygian, and the Hypo Lydian, as Collaterals.

Apuleius, and Martian Capella, changed the Order; Apuleius placing the Æolic first, and Martian Capella the Lydian.

Lucian gave the first Place to the *Pbrygian*, and many others, whom, for Brevity Sake, we forbear to mention, have given different Names to the Modes, and have placed them in a different Manner; for which Reason it is impossible, in speaking of the ancient Modes, to give any very diffinct or certain Account of them, either as to their Number, their Names, Order, or Situation.

Strabo, in the Place above quoted, speaking of the ancient Poets, fays, that as their Poetry confisted of different Measures, so the Methods of rehearing of it were different, and one could not be used for another. Their Verses having a certain determinate Order, they distributed them into three Classes, one of which was the Dittyrambic, the other the Tragic, and the third the Comic. To each of these Classes they assigned a proper Manner of Recitative; from whence it came to pass, that the Chants, or Music, derived from the Nature of the poetical Compositions, were called Modes. If the Verses related to any doleful Matter, they called it the Doleful Mode; if to any Thing Bacchanalian, the Bacchic, and so of the reft; and as the Nations were different, and every one had its proper.

8

1.5.64

proper Manner of reciting and finging peculiar to itfelf, they confequently denominated those Modes from the Countries where they were principally used, as the *Phrygian*, the *Doric*, the *Lydian*, &c. The *Doric* Mode was used by the People of *Doria*, in that Part of *Achaia*, which is now called the *Morea*; and this Mode partook fomething both of the *Lydian* and the *Phrygian*, that is, both of the foft and the harsh. The *Phrygian* Mode was employed by certain People in *Asia Minor*, who being by Nature of a fierce and cruel Disposition, it was confequently of a fevere and furious Quality. The *Lydian* Mode was introduced by the *Lydians*, a People of the *Great Asia*, of a chearful and gay Temper; and from thence it was called the moderate, or modest Mode. This is the Account given us by the aforefaid Author.

The above three Classes, mentioned by the fame Author, were called Genera by the *Greeks*, which three Genera they diffinguished into fix Colours, as they called them. One of those Genera was named the Diatonic, another the Chromatic, and the other Enharmonic. It is probable that the Dithyrambic was applied to the Diatonic, the Tragic to the Chromatic, and the Nomic, or Comic, to the Enharmonic. To the Enharmonic Genus was affigned one Colour, two to the Diatonic, and three to the Chromatic; which was called Chromatic, or coloured, because more Colours were affigned to it than to the other two.

Every one of the three Genera, with their Colours, were conftructed by the Diateffaron, being divided, by different Intervals, into four Strings. The two extreme Strings, of each Tetrachord of the greateft Syftem, were called fixed or immoveable: The other two, or middle Strings, were moveable, becaufe they were differently tuned, according as each Genus, and its Colours, required. Every one of the three Genera, and its Colours, had their proper Species, which were divided in the fame Intervals of its Genus and Colour, but in different Order, and in this Manner was diffinguished every Mode, *Pbrygian*, *Lydian*, &cc.

The above Intervals, relating to every one of the Genera, and their Colours, were differently divided by fome Authors, who followed the first Division of the first System of feven Strings, in Tones and Semitones, Major and Minor; which Division cannot sublist in the Transposition of the Scale, as has been demonstrated in the third Tetrachord of the greateft System. But the Measure of the abovesaid Intervals was justly computed by the Followers of Pythagoras, who confidered every Tetrachord of the fame greateft Syftem, as composed of two Major Tones, one Semitone of four Commas; only that the Diateffaron constructed in this Manner, confisting of twenty-two Commas, the smallest Intervals of the Genera become divided by Fractions, and confequently not fo clearly intelligible to those who are not so well acquainted with nice Calculations. Therefore the best and the eafieft Explanation of the above Intervals was made by Ariftoxenus, as it is defcribed by Euclid, (Introd. Harm.) Arifloxenus divided the Tone into twelve Parts, fix of which he gave to the Semitone. In this Manner the Diateffaron was composed of thirty Parts, being two Tones, and a Semitone. Four Parts of the above twelve Parts he affigned to the fmall Interval of the Chromatic, which was called Diefis Trientalis, namely, a third Part of a Tone; to the finalleft Interval of the Enharmonic, three Parts of the above twelve, which was called the quadrantal Diefis Enharmonic, namely, the fourth Part of a Tone. The Enharmonic Genus, being only diftinguished by one Colour, was composed of two quadrantal Diefis, and of one Ditone, namely, from the first String to the fecond, one of the faid Diefis, or Quarter of a Tone; another like Diefis from the fecond to the third String, and one Interval of a Ditone from the third String to the fourth; which three Intervals compose the perfect Diateflaron.

The Diatonic Genus was diffinguished by two Colours, one of which was named Molle, and this was formed by three Intervals, one of fix Parts, namely, a Semitone; another of nine Parts, or three Quarters of a Tone, and the other of fifteen Parts, namely, a Tone, and one Quarter of a Tone. The other Colour was called Syntonum, the Intervals whereof

werg

were fix, twelve, and twelve, or one Semitone, one Tone and one Tone; and this is the common Diatonic, which may be applied to the prefent natural Scale. The Chromatic was diftinguifhed by three Colours; the firft was named Molle, and was compose of two Intervals, each of one Triental Diefis, which is a third Part of a Tone, and another Interval, confisting of twenty two Parts, namely, one Tone, and ten Twelfths of a Tone, which three Intervals together make the perfect Diateffaron. The fecond Colour was named Sescuplum, or Hemiolion; and this was composed of two Intervals, each confisting of four Parts, and an Half of the twelve Parts, into which the Tone was divided; and of another Interval confisting of a Tone, and three Quarters of a Tone, or twenty-two Twelfths. The third Colour was named Toniæum, and was composed of three Intervals of fix, fix, and eighteen Parts, namely, from the first String to the fecond fix Parts, or one Semitone, from the fecond to the third String, fix other Parts, and from the third String to the fourth, an Interval of one Tone and an Half, or three Semitones. And in this Manner the three Genera, and their respective Colours, were divided.

Of the above fix Colours, which belong to the three Genera, only the Syntonum Diatonic is the natural, which may be applied to the prefent natural Scale, in afcending and defcending gradually, and by Skips, without any Alteration. The Tonizum Chromatic may alfo be applied to the prefent Scale, with its third Minor, being composed by three Semitones; but becaufe it is composed of one undivided Interval of three Semitones, can only afcend and defcend by Skips, but not gradually.

The other four Colours have all their Intervals unnatural, not only the leffer, but alfo the greater; it being impoffible to diffinguish the Difference between a third Part and a fourth Part of a Tone, by the common natural Senfation; befides the Difficulty, or rather Impracticability of a just Intonation of those leffer Intervals, and also of the larger Intervals, as the incomposite Intervals of nine, fifteen, twenty-one, and twenty-two twelfth Parts of a Tone. Therefore it is natural to fuppofe, that the Chromatic, being applied to Tragic Compositions, as before faid, one of its Colours might be used to express Pain, Cruelty, or Rage, and the other to express Grief, Horror, or Defpair; and the Enharmonic being applied to Comedy, the Comedians might endeavour to use the Intervals described in its . Colour. But we much question whether those Intervals were executed with an exact and just Intonation, which feems impracticable, and think it more probable, that the Performers of that Time, in their Manner of Singing in the Compass of these Colours, did much the fame Thing as is done at this prefent Time by fome Performers, who, to fhew their Ability, afcend or defcend two or more Tones with their Voices, or Inftruments, by extremely fmall and undiffinguishable Intervals; or, as it is done by fome Actors in the Comic Music, who proceed with their Voices in Imitation of Laughing or Crying, or fome other charged Expression.

This is in brief all which can be recovered of the ancient *Greek* Mufic, their Syftems, Modes, and Genera, which can ferve no other Purpofe, but to gratify the Curiofity, being all unneceffary to the Understanding and Practice of the prefent Mufic.

In the above State and Condition, Music continued in *Greece* till it was fubdued and conquered by the *Romans*; and nearly in the fame Manner was the Art exercised by the *Romans*, without any remarkable Alteration, till the fourth Century, when the Emperor *Constantine* the Great embraced the Christian Religion, in Consequence whereof Churches were publickly opened for the Use of his Christian Subjects.

Not long after that Time St. Ambrofe, Bishop of Milan, felected four Greek Modes, namely the Doric, the Phrygian, the Lydian, and the Mixo Lydian, in order to apply them to the Pfalms and Hymns of his Church of Milan: From whence afterwards Music entered gradually, and was spread into the other Churches.

In the fame Century, in the Time of Boetius, the Greek Letters which were before ufed in

the

the greatest or unchangeable System, as it was called, were altered, and in their Place the Letters of the *Roman* Alphabet were put, beginning with A, which was set against the Note Proslabanomenos of the first deep Note of that System, and from thence proceeding gradually, as far as the Letter P, which Letter was affigned to the Note Nete-hyperbolæon, the acutest in the System. But afterwards the Roman Letters were restrained by Pope Gregory the Great, to the first seven, A, B, C, D, E, F, G. After which the fame Letters followed again, but in the source from H to P, as used as used above; and thus they left out all the other Letters from H to P, as useless, and only tending to Confusion. The second Octave Acute was here confidered as only correspondent to the first.

This Pope added four others of the *Greek* Modes, to wit, the Hypo *Doric*, the Hypo *Phrygian*, the Hypo *Lydian*, and the Hypomixo *Lydian*, to those four which had been chosen by St. *Ambrole*.

The four chosen by St. Ambrofe were named authentic, and prefelect; and the four which were added were called plagal, or subservient. And these eight Tones were united two by two, one authentic, the other plagal, namely, the Doric with the Hypo Doric, the Phrygian with the Hypo Phrygian, the Lydian with the Hypo Lydian, and the Mixo Lydians with the Hypomixo Lydian.

Every two Modes thus united were reckoned as only one, the Doric and Hypo Doric, called Protos, or first, the Phyrgian and Hypo Phrygian, called Deuteros, or second, the Lydian and Hypo Lydian, called Tritos, or third, and the Mixo Lydian and the Hypomixo Lydian, called Tetartos, or fourth. But those Modes were afterwards separated, and the Authentic divided and diftinguished from the Plagal, in the following Order, namely, the first Authentic, the fecond Plagal, the third Authentic, the fourth Plagal, &c. the Authentic being always placed the first as prefelect, and the Plagal after, as subservient to the Authentic. The Diapente being affigned for the principal Form of the Mode, and the Diateffaron for the Difference, in a Manner, that when the Diateffaron was found in the acute Part of the Diapafon, as A, E, A, and the like, the Mode was authentic, and when the Diateffaron was in the lower, or grave Part of the Diapafon, as A, D, A, the Mode was plagal. And in this Manner every Mode authentic and plagal had a Place in one of the feven Species of the Diapafon (which feven Species were reckoned beginning from A to A, B to B, and fo of the reft, being in all feven Octaves) and when the Octave was divided geometrically, the Mode was authentic, and when divided arithmetically, was plagal; but the first Chord was always the grave Chord of the Diapente, to both the Authentic and the Plagal.

Guido Aretino, and his Followers, divided arithmetically only the first, fecond, and third Species, geometrically the fifth, fixth, and feventh, and the fourth Species arithmetically and geometrically. But *Henrico Glareano* observing, that every one of the feven Species of Octave may be divided both arithmetically and geometrically, except the fecond Species, beginning at the Chord Hypate, or B, and the fixth beginning at Paramese, or F, B not having its perfect Diapente, and F its perfect Diatessaron, in the Diatonic System, augmented the Tones to twelve, beginning always at A.

Zarlino in the fame Manner divided the feveral Species into twelve; but finding that when the first Species began in A, fome Notes of the Cantus Firmus, or plain Chant, were not in their natural Situation, he, in his fecond Edition of his harmonic Institutions, began the first Species in C, following in that the Opinion of Ptolony, according to which the Order of the first Species was Tone, Tone, and Semitone. But these Alterations were not received by the principal Churches of Italy, still adhering to the eight Tones or Modes of Guido Aretino; and those eight Tones are called the Tones of the Church, under the Names of Cantus Firmus, or Planus, and Cantus Gregorianus; and in the principal Churches of Italy, particularly those in the Dutchy of Milan, which followed the Ambrofian Ritual, it never was, nor nor is now permitted, to the Precentors, or Masters of the Choir, to transgress the Order of the Modes or Tones of *Guido Aretino*, in the Progression and Modulation of their Compositions, in what is called Alla Breve for the Chapel.

This has been, and is now punctually obferved, out of Veneration for the two great Perfonages who first introduced those Modes or Tones into the Church. However, it occasioned amongst the Professors themselves, a Confusion and Difference of Opinion, the Rules being ill understood, and never perfectly applicable to Harmony, which was not at all tasted by the *Greeks*, or old *Romans*. And this Confusion arose from mixing of the imperfect *Greek* Modulations, as every one may different, by examining the above-mentioned Tones of the Church, whose middle and final Cadences are almost all imperfect and improper for true harmonical Combination and Progression; as may be seen in the *Te Deum* printed in the Edition of the feven *Greek* Authors published at *Amsterdam* by *Meibomius*.

In the eleventh Century it may be faid, that the Art of Mufic entered from its Childhood into Youth, under the Tuition and Direction of a Benedictine Monk, the aforementioned *Guido Aretino*, fo named from being of the City of *Arezzo*, in *Tufcany*.

He, in the first Place, reformed the abovefaid greatest System of the Greeks, as being incongruous with Harmony, of which he seems to have been the first that had any Knowledge, and distinguished it from Melody, as will be seen below.

The Order of the abovefaid greateft System could ferve for no other Purpose almost, but fimple Melody.

As to the first System of the feven Strings, or Tetrachord conjunct, it began with the Chord Hypate (B of the prefent Syftem) diftant a Semitone from the next Chord lefs grave Parhypate (now C.) This B could not fubfift either as a first principal Note or Sound, or as a Final, fince, being diftant a Semitone from its following Note, it could not be accented; it being neceffary to have the Accent fall upon a Note, between which and the next Note above it there is an entire Tone. This any one may try by folfaing the Scale; for he will find, that Mi, which is a Semitone diftant from Fa, will naturally pass to, and reft itself upon the fame Fa, upon which Fa, as an accented Note, the Melody perfectly terminates. The final Note can only happen to be Mi, as a fecondary Note in the harmonic fundamental Combination, and by Way of Sufpenfion of the Harmony, as in a fufpended Cadence, but never as a principal Note of Harmony. There must be an Interval of a Semitone between the principal Note of the Scale, and an Interval of a full Tone between the principal Note of the Scale, and the next higher Note, it being neceffary for the Melody to proceed by thefe two Intervals, to fall upon the principal Note of the Scale; as clearly appears in the Cadences in four Parts, where the Bafs defcends a Fifth, or afcends a Fourth, the Mi Semitone, which makes the third to the Bafs, afcends to the Octave, and the fuperior Part, which ferves as a perfect Fifth to the fame Bafs Note, defcends a full Tone to the Octave of the Bafs, or may afcend to the third; confequently the Note Hypate, or B, diftant but a Semitone from its next Acute Note, can only ferve as a third Harmonic to the fundamental Note; and the next Note fuperior to this harmonic Third, must have an Interval of a full Tone between it and the Note next above it, which must answer the Purpose of a perfect Fifth to the fundamental Bass, in order that the faid Fifth and Third may fall together, in Confonance, into the principal Note of the Octave.

Now the Syftem beginning with the Chord Proflambanomenos, the first deep Note of the greatest System, succeeds much worse in respect of Harmony. This System being far from the true natural Order, called by the *Greeks* the Diatonic, the Note Proslambanomenos (which is A in the modern Scale) can be neither Principal nor Middle, neither can it ferve as an Harmonic Note to the Principal, nor to its fundamental fifth Note, in its first Order of Combination. The principal Note of a Scale, which ferves as a System, ought

ought to be confidered as the Mother of all the Sounds attending it, they being all included in it, and its confonant Octave above; and the fifth, its intermediate Sound, being confonant with the faid principal Note, is the Guide that directs the Progreffion, by afcending or defcending a Fifth, and at laft conducts the Harmony to its Principal; as will be more fully explained in its Place, in the following Book.

A Scale of Sounds, which are not ftable, but fubject to vary, can never be a natural Syftem of Sounds, which ought to be fixed and unalterable. The Chord Proflambanomenos, or A, which ftands at the Head of the faid greateft Syftem, has its third Sound naturally flat; and in defcending an Octave from A to A, the fixth and feventh are both naturally flat; but in afcending the fixth and feventh, must both be altered a Semitone higher, without which the Octave cannot be afcended gradually; confequently here would be required two Scales, one for afcending, and the other for defcending.

The Melody can very eafily defcend the Octave from A Acute to A below, by a natural, or Diatonic Gradation, but then in afcending to the faid A Acute, you can never arrive there, without changing the fixth and feventh Sounds a Semitone higher; for the Diftance between the feventh and Octave can never be more than a Semitone, in the natural Order. Therefore a Scale, which has its third Sound diftant from the first one Tone, and one Semitone, that is a third Minor, cannot be the natural Scale, becaufe the fourth Note muft have also the Minor Third, which must be altered in ascending the Scale. From hence it is clear, that in the true natural Scale, the principal Note must have its third Sound at the Diftance of two Tones, that is of a greater Third; from whence it follows, that the Sixth comes to be a greater Sixth, which fixth Note ferves for a greater Third to the fourth Note, which always has its third Note fimilar to that of the Principal; that is greater, if it be greater; and less, if it be less. So likewise the seventh Note, which serves for a greater, or Major Third to the middle Note the Fifth, which is the fundamental Guide, ought to be greater; and in this Manner the Scale remains unalterable, and the principal Note of it must easily be known; for fince in the natural Scale there are only three Notes, which have the greater Thirds, one of these three must be the Principal; but then as the Principal must have not only the greater Third, but also the perfect Fourth, perfect Fifth, and greater Seventh; the Fourth, though it has a Major Third, perfect Fifth, and greater Seventh, nevertheless, as its Fourth is not just, but false, cannot be a Principal.

In like Manner the fifth Note, though it has a Major Third, and perfect Fourth and Fifth, yet, as the Seventh is Minor, it cannot be a principal Note of the Scale. From whence it is evident, that the principal Note of the natural Scale must be the Note C, or Parhypate; and that the *Greek* Systems, both the old one of feven Strings, and the greatest, or immoveable, were ill disposed, beginning with the Chord Hypate, or B, in the first System, and the Chord Proslambanomenos, or A in the greatest System.

It is manifeft, from what has been faid, that *Guido Aretino* had good Reafon for reforming the ancient Syftem, by annexing a new Sound to the old deep one, which new Sound he called Gamma (the prefent G) being diftant a Tone, in Depth, from the Proflambanomenos of the ancient greateft Syftem.

He did not increase the Number of Sounds, by adding the Note G, for the Sake, as fome have imagined, of perpetuating by that Letter, his own Name, *Guido*, as the Inventor of this System; neither did he do it, as others have more modestly afferted, to preferve the Memorial of the Commencement of Music in *Greece*. It was not owing to these Causes, we fay, but to pure Necessity, which obliged him to put the Scale in such Order, as would best answer the Purpose of Harmony; and if he began not the Scale by its true principal Sound, which is C, it was probably owing to his Difinclination to change the whole Order of Letters of the Alphabet, as established by Pope *Gregory*, or perhaps to his Veneration for him. However, beginning with the Letter G, he obtained the lower

E

Octave

Octave of G, the middle Sound of the natural Scale, and the Guide of Progression in the fame Scale; and he obtained also along with it the Octave Sound of the feventh Note B, which ferved him for a greater Third to the fame G; and by this Means the Harmonic Order was preferved.

Guido not only mended the old greater Syftem, but he alfo introduced fix Monofyllables, in order therewith to learn and practife the Art of Singing. These Monofyllables were ut, re, mi, fa, fol, la, which, it is faid, he took from a Strophe, or Stanza, of a Latin Hymn, written in Honour of St. John Baptist, of which he chose the first and fixth Syllables of every Verse, as is here seen.

> Ut queant Lais Refonare fibris, <u>Mira geftorum Famuli tuorum</u> <u>Solve polluti Labii reatum.</u> <u>5</u>

#### SANCTE JOHANNES.

To

It was abserved above, that the first Letters of the Roman Alphabet were employed in the ancient Syftem; and that those were afterwards restrained by Pope Gregory to the first These ferved the Purpose of learning to fing, by applying to its correspondent Note feven. the Letter that denominated it. But Guido perhaps observing, that those Letters expressed the Progression of the Sounds in a very indistinct Manner, by Reason, that in pronouncing each Confonant, the Letter E is fubjoined thereto, as, BE, CE, DE, Gc. at every Sound, however different they were, nothing was heard but a Repetition of the fame Termination, except when the Note fell upon the Letter A, and that this Uniformity, or Similiarity of Terminations, could not but breed Confusion; and observing, perhaps, in reciting the Office employed on the Festival of St. John Baptist, that the first and fixth Syllable of the first Strophe of the above-mentioned Hymn, contained all the five Italian Vowels, he thought proper to make Choice of them, and by their Means to render the Sounds more diffinct in going through them with the Voice. But as the faid fix Monofyllables were to be affigned to the eight Notes, or Sounds of the Scale, by which Means, in afcending from the lowest to the highest, two of them must necessarily be repeated.

Therefore he diffinguished them by these different Stations, every one containing a Scale of fix gradual Sounds; and he called these different Scales by the *Greek* Name Hexachord, (that is, a Succession of fix Sounds) as the *Greeks* called the different Partitions of their Systems in four Strings, or Sounds, Tetrachords, as mentioned before.

The first Hexachord began with the Note Gamma, or G, comprehending G, A, B, C, D, E, and this he called the Hexachord of B Durum, or B natural.

The fecond Hexachord began with the Note C, (being the fourth Note of his System) and comprehended C, D, E, F, G, A; and this he called the natural Hexachord.

The third Hexachord began with the Note F, the feventh Note in his System, and comprehended the Notes, F, G, A, Bb, C, D; and this he called the Hexachord of B Mole, because the fourth Note of the Scale must be altered with a B Mole, or Flat.

For the better Diffunction of these Hexachords, he annexed to the Letters, which were already appropriated to the Notes of his System, the fix different Monofyllables, which, according to the Change of their Situation, they have in the three different Hexachords.

Thus to the Letter ascribed to the deepest Note Gamma, he annexed ut, and called it Gammut.

#### 14

To the fecond Letter he annexed Re, and called it A re.

To the third Letter B, he annexed mi, and called it B mi.

To the fourth Note C, he annexed the Syllables Fa and ut, and called it CFa ut, namely, fa as the fourth Note belonging to the Hexachord of Gammut; and ut as the first Note of the Hexachord of C.

To the following Note D, he annexed the Syllables Sol and Re, and called it D, fol, re, namely, Sol as the fifth Note in the Hexachord of Gammut, and Re, as the fecond Note of the Hexachord of C.

To E, the next Letter, he annexed the Syllables La and Mi, and called it E la mi, namely La, as the fixth and last Note of the first Hexachord G, and Mi as the third Note of the fecond Hexachord of C.

F, the following Letter in Acute, was called Fa, when confidered as the fourth Note of the Hexachord of C, and ut as the first Note of the third Hexachord F, and together was named, F, fa, ut.

The next Letter G was called G, fol, re, ut. Sol as the fifth Note in the Hexachord of C, Re, as the fecond Note in the Hexachord of F, and ut as the first Note of its own Hexachord, which is a Repetition of the first Hexachord of Gammut, an Octave higher.

The next Letter A was named A, La, mi, re, namely La, as the fixth Note in the fecond Hexachord of C, Mi as the third Note in the third Hexachord of F, and re as the fecond Note in the fourth Hexachord G.

The following Letter B, was called B, fa, mi; Mi as the third Note of the fourth Hexachord G, which being a Repetition (as before faid) of the first Hexachord Gammut, is confequently of the B durum Classe; and Fa, as it is the fourth Note in the Octave of the third Hexachord F, which is in the Class of b Mole, because the fame Letter B being durum, or natural, would exceed, by a Semitone, the perfect and just Fourth, in the above Hexachord of F; confequently B must be diminished a Semitone with a b Mole to make it a perfect Fourth; as has been explained before, in the Description of the third Tetrachord of the greatest Greek System.

The other following Letters are named and difpofed in the Manner clearly defcribed in the fixth and feventh Examples, Plates II. and III. both containing feven fucceffive Hexachords. By the Means above-mentioned, the ancient greateft Syftem was augmented with the Note Gamma in the Grave, and with five Notes more in Acute, as appears in Plate III. Example VII. And this Augmentation was neceffary for the proper Diffribution into the divers Scales belonging to the different Parts, Grave, Middle, and Acute, in Harmonic Compositions.

By the Help of the above Monofyllables, applied to the forementioned Hexachords, Guido taught his Difciples to ftudy and practife the Art of Singing. And, for a better Help to the Memory, he difpofed the fame Hexachords, in their Order, upon the left Hand, as is fhewn in the fixth Example, Plate II. above-mentioned, explaining the divers Mutations in afcending and defcending the whole Scale. In afcending the Scale, the deepeft Note Gama, or G, was called Ut; A, the fecond Note, Re; B, the third Note, Mi; C, the fourth Note of the fame Hexachord of G, was called Fa; D, the following Note, Sol; and E, the laft Note of the fame Hexachord, La, when they proceeded no higher; but if they went on afcending to F, D was called Re, E mi, F Fa, G Sol, and A La; and, proceeding higher, G was called Re, A mi, B being flat Fa, C Sol, and D La; but afcending to the next Note E, D was called Re, E Mi, F Fa, G Sol, and A La; La; and proceeding to the next Notes ftill more acute, A was called Re, B mi; the reft in the fame Order as above explained, changing the first Hexachord into the fecond, the fecond into the third, the third into the fourth,  $\mathcal{E}c$ . and when these Hexachords, or the whole Scale, is transposed higher or lower, the general Rule is, that the Note which is marked with a Diefis, or Sharp, must be called Mi, the next below it Re, and the Note next above it Fa. On the contrary, when a Note is contra marked with a b Mole, or flat, that Note must be called Fa, consequently the Note next below it  $Mi_3$ and the Note next above it Sol, in ascending the Scale by a sharp Third, and Re in afcending by a flat Third.

By the Help of the different Applications of the above Monofyllables to the Notes, every one learned how to diffinguish immediately the Scales, in all the Transpositions that might happen; a Method of Practice which continues to this Day in *Italy*, under the Name of Solfaing, and in some other Countries, with some Variation.

The Monofyllable Ut was afterwards changed into Do; because that in the *Italian* Pronounciation, the Sound of the Vowel U is not thought so pleasing and agreeable, nor so proper for Music.

Guido also changed the ancient Manner of writing Music. The Method before was to use the Letters of the Alphabet, by which the several Notes of the Scale were diffinguished; and to write them all upon one Line, one after another, in Length, as mentioned by Boetius. But Guido fubfituted in their Place certain Points disposed upon, and between, four Lines, and afterwards five, from whence came the Name of Counterpoint, in Compofition of Music, and prefixed, at the Beginning of one of the Lines, one of the Letters, by which all the Points upon and between every Line were regulated and afcertained. For Example, the Letter C being placed at the Beginning of any Line, the Point upon that Line was called and efteemed the Note C, the Point in the Space next it was D, the Point on the next Line E; and fo the reft in Sequence. So in defcending, the first Point, or Note, in the Space next below the Line, marked with C, was B, that on the Line next below A, and & from Space to Line, the others followed progreflively; and when any other Letter was placed upon any of the Lines, the Point upon that Line was the Note or Sound denominated by that Letter; and all the Points upon the Lines and Spaces above and below were reckoned from the Line marked with the Letter, fo that, from any Letter placed upon any Line, the Order of the Scale, both higher and lower, was immediately known.

But the greateft Improvement which Guido made in the Science of Music, was the Introduction of Harmony, by joining it to Melody, and forming therewith different Compositions of two, three, and four Parts. These Parts confisted of different Notes, varying in their Order, one amongst another, but united harmoniously together, so as to afford infinite Pleasure to the Ear. This Harmony was as simple as possible, confisting only of a Combination of the first or principal Note, with its Third, Fifth, and Octave, which he disposed in the most agreeable and harmonious Manner. Guido adapted this Harmony to the Chants, or Tones of the Church.

He also published a Treatife of Music under the Title of *Micrologus*, with his *Intro*ductorium, and also an *Antiphonaicum*, for the Use of the Church; for which Cardinal *Baronus*, in his Annals, inferted the following remarkable Note.

His quoque postremis temporibus, scilicet, Benedicti Octavi Papæ, Guidus Aretinus Professione Monacus, Musicus insignis innotuit, qui, maxima omnium admiratione, novam addiscendi Musicam rationem invenit; ita ut puer paucis mensibus disceret, quod pluribus annis vix homo quilibet, pollens ingenio, ante capere potuisset, qua etiam de Causa Romam vocatus est ab codem Benedicto Pontifice, postea vero Joanne vigesimo Benedicti Successore anno ætatis trigesimo

#### trigefimo quarto, edidit de Musica Librum, quem Micrologum nuncupatum dedicavit Theobaldo 'Episcopo Aretino.

All thefe Improvements, which Guido introduced, extending themfelves, by Degrees, from Italy into the other Christian Kingdoms, and States of Europe, were generally received by the whole Church; and thus the Precentors, or Masters of the Choir, in every particular Church, who before had only taught the Chant Choral, called Cantus Firmus, or Gregorian Chant, laid themfelves out to become Imitators of Guido; and pursuing his Rules, to grow even Composers; every one striving not only to join Parts, in an harmonical Way, to the Cantus Firmus, or Gregorian Chant, but even to devise, and invent new Tones, or Specimens of Melody: Infomuch, that by the Ease and Facility of Solfaing, Melody itself made great Advances, and became greatly varied from the ancient Greek and Roman Manner.

However, the Melody of this Age being composed of Notes folong, that one of them fometimes ferved for a whole Period, the new Improvements, which were daily making, required the breaking of those long Notes into fhorter Times and Measures; fo that the original Notes and Points introduced by *Guido*, were daily found to be infufficient for the Purpose of writing and expressing the new invented Strains.

To remedy this Defect, an Advocate of the Parliament of *Paris*, called *John de Muris*, who was a Lover of Mufic, and flourithed in the fourteenth Century, invented certain new Notes or Characters, by which the different Lengths, or Times of Sounds, might be commodioufly expressed, which proved of great Advantage and Benefit towards the farther *not* a Improvement of Melody.

These Marks, or Characters of Music, were of different Figures, to denote the different Length of the Time, and formed in the Manner described in Plate IV. Example VIII. Fig. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10.

The first Characters, Figure 1, was called Maxima, and contained two Longs: The Long (defcribed in the fecond Fig.) contained two Breves: The Breve (third Fig.) two Semibreves: The Semibreve (fourth Fig.) two Minims: The Minim (fifth Fig.) two Semiminims, or Crotchets: The Semi-minim (Fig. 6.) two Chromas or Quavers (Fig. 7.) And in Process of Time the Semi-chroma, or Semi-quaver, two of which make one Chroma, or Quaver; and afterwards Bischroma, or Hemisemi-quaver, two of which make one Semi-chroma, or Semi-quaver, and a Note equal to half of the triple Bischroma, were added, as in the Fig. 8, 9, and 10.

Under the above Notes are fhewn the correspondent Marks, which ferve to indicate the Times and Measures which the particular Parts are to observe, in resting or joining with the others; each of the Marks expressing the same Number of Measures as its corresponding Note, namely, the Note called Maxima, and its corresponding Rest, contain eight Measures: The Long in the second Fig. and its corresponding Rest, contain four Measures: The Breve two Measures, the Semi-breve one Measure; the Minim half a Measure; the Semi-minim a Quarter of a Measure; the Chroma half a Quarter; eight Chromas, fixteen Semi-chromas, and thirty-two Bischromas being contained in one Measure, as appears in the Figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, Plate IV.

Now, by Means of these Measures, the Time was divided into two, four, and eight Parts: But then there being apparently an Occasion for a Measure, which should divide the Time into three Parts; therefore the Measures were distinguished into two Sorts; namely, of common Time and triple Time. In the common or ordinary Time, marked as in Plate V. Example IX. each Measure is divided into four Parts, except in the Alla Breve, in which each Measure, containing one Breve, is divided in two Parts: The same for the Time *a Capella*, or Chapel Time, which contains one Semi-breve, or two Minims.

F

Befides

Befides these Marks, there have been added to the Character, that diftinguished the common Time, called the ordinary Time, the following other Marks,  $\frac{2}{4}$ ,  $\frac{4}{5}$ ,  $\frac{4$ 

The first containing two Semi-minims, or four Chromas; the fecond four Chromas, or eight Semi-chromas; the third fix Semi-chromas, and the last twelve Semi-chromas.

In the triple Time the ancient Marks have been difcarded; and at prefent there are but three Sorts, whereof the first is  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the fecond  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the third  $\frac{1}{2}$ , by which is meant, that the first contains one Semi-breve, and one Minim, or three Minims; the fecond three Semi-minims, and the third three Chromas. There are in Ufe alfo other Signs, or Figures, which partake, as it were, of both the common and triple Time: These are represented thus,  $\frac{6}{4}$ ,  $\frac{6}{4}$ , and may be divided into three, and into two Times, which is to be found by the Accent of the Notes in their Progression, The first Mark generally ferves for triple Time, the fecond expresses rather common Time, to wit, when they are Semichromas tied together by three; for when they are all tied together, they appertain to triple Time.

To these Notes also, when it was necessary, was added a Point, which fignified, that the Note to which the Point was added, was to be lengthened or increased with half its own Value; for Example, if to the Note called a Breve, a Point was added, it was to be held out a Semi-breve longer; and so a Chroma with a Point obtained the Length of a Chroma, and of a Semi-chroma; and so of the reft. Under the Example of the above Signs or Marks of the different Time, in the fame fifth Plate, are represented all the different Notes, which belong to each of the fame Marks.

Monfieur *de Muris* changed alfo the Letters which *Guido Arctino* used to place at the Beginning of the Lines, whereon the Notes were written; and instead of them, he invented three Signs, or Characters, which were placed in like Manner at the Beginning of the five Lines. These were of three different Forms, as may be seen in the fame fifth Plate, Example X.

One was called the Key of F, and was to ferve for the Bafs; the other the Key of C, which ferved for the middle and higher Voices; and the third was called the Key of G, and ferved for Inftruments of the higheft Sound.

The Key of F was differenced according to the two Lines whereon it was placed. If that Key appeared on the fecond Line from the uppermoft, it ferved for the Bafs; but if it was found on the middle Line, it ferved for the Baffe called Baritono.

The Key of C ferved for four middle and acute Voices. The first on the fecond Line from the Top was the Key for the Tenor, which is the Voice next above the Baritono. If the fame Key C was placed on the middle Line, it ferved for the Contralto or Countertenor, which is next above the Tenor. But, if it was placed in the fourth Line from the Top, it ferved for the fecond Soprano or Treble; and when placed on the last or lowest Line, for the first Soprano or Treble.

The third Key was called the Key of G, which was for the use of the most acute Instruments, and was placed on the fourth Line from the Top and the lowest Line.

Each of these Keys is distant from the next Key to it a Third; and all of them, except three, continue in Use to this Day.

The three that are in fome Measure difused are the Key of F on the middle Line, called the Baritono; the Key of C on the lowest Line but one, for the second Treble; and the Key of G upon the last Line, for the Use of the most acute Kind of Instruments. These

have

have been difcarded; because the others, which are retained, are fufficient for the Purpose of common Music in four, five, and fix Parts. But nevertheless in the more folemn Music of the Church, composed for two and more Choruss, in eight and fixteen real Parts, they are all still made use of, and particularly for four Choruss, where they are necessary for the commodious Distribution of the Parts.

In the above fifth Plate, under the Example X, are expressed the Marks of the Repeats, Directs,  $\Im c$ . of which there is no need to enter into a diffinct Enumeration and Explanation in this Place, the Inspection of the Example, where they are clearly represented, being sufficient for the Information of every Reader.

After these Inventions of John de Muris, Music was daily improving, not only in Melody, but even in Harmony itfelf. And as divers Inftruments, the beft adapted to Mufic, were now more commonly used than they had been; namely Harpfichords, Viols, Violins, Tenors, and Bafs-Violins, &c. and as thefe derived from the Voice the fweetest and most pathetic Melody, so on the other Hand, the Voices acquired from them, as being the most ready and easy in the Execution, the Diminutions of the different Notes, in Airs and other quick and lively Movements; infomuch that the Vocal Performers and Inftrumental, friving to outdo each other, they have by Degrees arrived at that Perfection, which at this Day we have the Pleafure of hearing. The good Effect of this Emulation appears more eminently in Inftrumental Performances. For Skill and Ability in Inftrumental Mufic depends folely upon Genius, and Inclination affifted by Application, and intenfe Practice: But to excel in Vocal Mufic, befides a natural Genius for Mufic, there muft be not only Practice and Application, but also an admirable Voice, which is very uncommon. And this we apprehend to be the Reafon that in this Age we find fo many more excellent Instrumental Performers, than we do Singers; which nevertheless is recompenced to us by Nature herfelf; fince, generally speaking, a moderate Singer always pleases more, than the best Hand upon an Instrument, the Voice being the best Instrument because it is natural, and confequently more pleafant than any artificial one whatfoever.

Moreover Harmony itfelf gained confiderable Advantages, by the Improvements in Melody. It was obferved, that in the Dimunition of Notes, Sounds were found out, which contributed much to the pleafing of the Ear, and that many of those Dimunitions might be performed upon a fimple Ground, not only in their proper Situation, but also out of it, and even reversed. For Example, it was perhaps observed that the seventh of the fifth Note of every Octave or Scale whatsoever, never failed to please whensoever it was properly introduced; and that not only when it was combined with the fundamental Note, or Ground in the Bass, but also with the first Natural, and simple Chords of the principal Note of the Scale; infomuch, that if they were reversed amongst themselves, and even if the fundamental Bass was transposed into the intermediate, or middle Sounds, they still afforded a perfect Harmony, by being resolved into the following Sound. This seventh Sound was therefore introduced; and from thence there sprung the Chords of the greater Fourth, the false Fifth, and the greater Sixth; the Chord of the perfect Fourth and Sixth, which proceeds from the perfect Chords of the principal Note of the Scale, having before been difcovered by *Guido Aretino*.

From the aforefaid Seventh of the fifth fundamental Note, they paffed afterwards to the Sevenths of the other Sounds of the natural Scale; which being first introduced into the Harmony, by the first fimple Combination, which in the proper mufical Term is called Preparation, were also found to be pleasing to the Ear, by passing into another fimple Accord, called by Musicians, Resolution.

From the feventh they proceeded to the ninth Note of the principal Scale, or the Note next above the Octave of the fame Principal: Though the Relation of the Ninth to the Ground Note, was not perfectly underftood, because few Composers are practifed in Writing

in

in eight or more real Parts, but only in four or five Parts; where the fundamental Ninth paffes under another Denomination, almost continually; and confequently has a different Preparation and Refolution, because the Bass is not found in its true Place. Also finding by the Example of the fundamental Sevenths, that even the Ninths (though under the Name of a Second, false Fifth, or Seventh diminiscent became harmonical and pleasing, they were admitted in Time into the harmonic Combination.

Now, by Means of these added Sounds, or Notes, which amongst Musicians go by the Name of Discords prepared and resolved, Musical Compositions became, as they are at this Day, the Subject of Study and Labour; there being composed Canons, Fugues, and Imitations, fingle and double, of different Subjects united together, which constitute the most agreeable Study, but require great Practice and Application.

From the Middle of the laft Century to the prefent Time, the harmonic Art has arrived at its *Ne plus ultra*; and the Method of forming a Composition with an Union of all the Eight primary Sounds of any Scale whatfoever, hath been found out, and is practifed in *Italy* in the grand and folemn Compositions for the Church for eight real Voices, doubled and trippled, in two diffinct Choruffes, without Inftruments, and for fixteen Parts alfo doubled and trippled, in four feparate Choruffes, as used in the great Church of *Milan*, called the *Domo*.

The Rules for those Compositions will be made very clear and intelligible by Means of the Canons or Rules of the harmonic Code, in the second Book.

Thus we have given a flort Hiftory of the Progress of Music, from the Time it was first introduced into *Greece* by their Poets, so far as we think necessary for the understanding of the different Terms, Modes,  $\mathcal{C}c$ . gradually introduced and practised from thence unto the present Time; and to lead the Reader into the more ready Acquaintance with the ensuing Treatife on the Harmonic Art.



DELL



# DELL' ARTE ARMONICA:

0 R,

# A TREATISE of the Composition of MUSIC.

# BOOK I.

Containing the general and particular Definitions and Divisions of the Whole HARMONIC ART, the Modern System of Sounds, with Two New Systems of COMBINATION of Sounds, and their Progression, formed by the Author.

To which are added,

All the SCALES arifing from the above SYSTEMS.

# CHAP. I.

# The Definition of Music in general, and its Divisions.

#### ARTICLE I.



HE Word MUSIC has been applied to many and various Subjects; but, in this Treatife, it fignifies no more than a Succeffion of Sounds in themfelves agreeable and properly expressed, which alone, or differently combined, in changing from low to high, or from flow to quick Movement, or vice versa, delights and gives Pleasure; confequently the Sounds are the Matter of Music; the Disposition of those Sounds, either alone, or combined

in a pleafing Succeffion, is the Art and the End to affect the Paffions with agreeable Senfations, which become more or lefs fo, not only from the Degree of Perfection the Art is arrived at, but alfo from the different Conftitutions and Habits of the Auditors, as remarked in the Introduction.

**O**f

Of the Division of Music.

#### ARTICLE II.

W E shall first divide Music into Melody and Harmony, and this regards in general every Species of it. Afterwards we shall diftinguish it into Vocal, Instrumental, and Local, from being used in the Church, Theatre, Chamber, &c. every one of these having some particular Rules, over and above the common Rules relative to Harmony, which particular Rules will be explained in the last Book.

# Of Melody and its Division.

#### ARTICLE III.

**E** VERY Tone, Air, or Song, formed by Progreffion of different Sounds, but following alone one after another, or by two or more finging the fame Sound, is called Melody. This may be divided into Natural and Artificial, but both are the Daughters of Nature.

The Natural is deprived of every Ornament, and is not fubject to any Rules, being practifed by People ignorant of Mufic.

The Artificial, on the contrary, is improved and adorned by the Harmonic Art, to which it is made a Companion, proceeding together by fixed Rules, excepting where Invention is concerned, which depends almost entirely upon Nature.

# Of Harmony.

#### ARTICLE IV.

HE Antient Writers of Music, as many Moderns, call the different Ratios of the fupposed Intervals of the Sounds, by the Word Harmony. So Euclides in his Introduction to the Harmonic Art; the fame by Gaudentius the Philosopher, as by Nicomacus the Scholar of Pythagoras. Ptolomy defines the Harmony, a Knowledge of the Difference of the Sounds in regard to their Acuteness or Gravity: The same by Zerlino in his Inftitutions and Demonstrations Harmonic; also Huygens calls his Cyclo Harmonic in his Cosmotheoros, Dechales, Cotas, Wallis, Malcombe, and of late Mr. Eular in his Tentatem Nove Theorie Musice; fo Dr. Smith, Head of Trinity-College, Cambridge, in his learned Book intitled, The Harmonic. All, and many others, have used the Word Harmony to be applied to the Ratios of the above fuppofed Interval betwixt the different Sounds. But in this Treatife, where the Sounds are not confidered in the Ratios of their fuppofed Intervals, but only in the immediate Effect, which alone, or combined in their Progression, produce into the Senfation; we shall define, that Harmony is a Product of the Progression of two, three, or more different or diffonant Sounds (diftinctly perceived by the Senfation) joined together and artificially combined. We fay, a Progression of different and diffonant Sounds together combined, becaufe a fimple Combination of Sound, without Progression, cannot be called a compleat Harmony, being no more than a Beginning of Harmony, which fignifies nothing, as a fimple Word is not a Discourse, or an Oration, but only a Part.

# Of the Division of Harmony.

#### ARTICLE V.

HARMONY must be divided into Fundamental and Figurate, both Daughters of the Art: The Fundamental is the only practical Theory of the Harmonic Art; it is diffinguished diftinguished from all other Musical Compositions by the Name of fundamental Counterpoint, which is so called from Points, instead of Notes, being applied; and fundamental, because properly it is the Foundation of the Harmony; as the Bass Part, which is the lowest of all the other Parts, is also called fundamental, for being the Harmony regulated by its different Motions. By this fundamental Counterpoint are composed feveral Examples, which we call Canons, into and by which are described and explained all the Laws or Rules of the Harmonic Art, or of Composition of Music, all ordinarily joined in one Harmonic Code, which will be explained in the next Book.

The figurate Harmony is ufually called by the Muficians the figurate Mufic, becaufe it is formed with divers Figures, Movements, and Times, at Pleafure; but it is ftill fubject to the Laws and Rules which will be laid down in the Harmonic Code of the fundamental Harmony. The figurate Harmony may be a Composition of two, three, four Parts, and as far as fixteen, and more real Parts joined together with Melody. The Explanation of this figurate Mufic, with its Divisions, and its Relations to the fundamental Harmony, will be made after we have digested the Harmonic Laws, or Rules, prescribed by the Harmonic Code, in the next Book.

# CHAP II.

# Of the Musical Sounds, their Definition, Number, and different Intervals.

#### The DEFINITION.

#### ARTICLE I.

T belongs to Phyfic to define and explain the Nature of Sound in what Manner it is produced and propagated, and alfo what Bodies are most fit to produce it, and into how many Species it is to be divided, with the Properties of every one. But Mufical Sounds, which are occasioned by the human Voice, or Instruments proper for Mufic, must be fweet and equal in all the Degree of Acuteness, or Gravity, and confequently pleasant in themselves; it being evident, that a bad, unequal, and ill-disposed Voice, like a bad Fiddle, or all other Instruments ill-tuned, or played, cannot afford any Pleasure, which is the very End and Design of Music.

## Of the Number of Musical Sounds.

#### ARTICLE II.

THERE are no more than eight original Sounds in Music; but these Sounds may be transposed more acute, or more grave, still retaining the same Number and Order; and tho' the Intervals may be infinitely divided, so as to comprehend all possible Sound, yet the Octave of every Division will have a similar Sound, either grave or acute, and by Octaves may be multiplied at Pleasure, as was mentioned in the Introduction.

# Of the different Intervals of the eight original Sounds.

### ARTICLE III.

THE original eight Sounds proceed from the Grave to the Acute, and vice versa, by two different Intervals. It was taken Notice in the Introduction, that the Greeks diffinguished

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

diftinguished the Intervals of the Sounds of the first Diatonic System of the Tetrachord conjoined, by the Names of Tone Major, Tone Minor, and Semitone: Afterwards in their System called the greatest and unchangeable, they were obliged to divide the Interval of the Major Tone, between the Chords Mefe and Paramefe (that is, A, B, in the modern System) in order to add a new Sound, which was called Trite Synemmenon (now called B flat) this new Sound was the first Note of the third Tetrachord, which was added conjoint to the two first; by this Addition was supposed, that the Intervals of the fame third Tetrachord arofe in the fame Order as in the first and second, beginning with a Semitone: From the above Division has arisen the supposed Difference of the Semitone in Major and Minor, confifting of one Comma, to wit, the Major Semitone five Commas; and the Minor four; as from the Chord Mefe, or A, to the added Chord Trite Synemmenon, or B flat, five Commas, and from the fame Trite Synemmenon to Paramele, or B natural, four Commas; fo from Paramele to the Chord Trite Diezeugmenon, or C, five Commas, confequently a Major Tone from Trite Synemmenon, to Trite Diezeugmenon, which Difference in Major and Minor was not confidered by the Pythagoreans, nor by the Follower of Aristoxenus; the Pythagoreans confidering all the Tones of the greatest System, as Major of nine Commas, and the Semitones all of four Commas, which makes the Pythagorean Lima, as has been told in the Introduction, and the Followers of Aristoxenus, by which were calculated the Tones in twelve Parts, and the Emitones, or Semitones, in fix Parts, confequently all equal, and is more than probable, that the above Difference in Major and Minor Tones, and Semitones, was never confidered in Practice. The above greatest, and unchangeable System, was divided into Semitones by Aristoxenus, which certainly is the best of the Greeks who have wrote in Mufical Matters, and in that Manner he diffinguished his fifteen Modes by the Diateffaron, or perfect Fourth, which is formed by equal Semitones, as has been feen in his Diagrama, Example V. Plate I. mentioned in the Introduction. If these Semitones had been fuppofed not equal, the Diateffarons by which the fame fifteen Modes were composed, should have been partly imperfect, being evident, that the Minor Tones being divided into two Minor Semitones, and the Major Tones in one Major, and one Minor Semitone, confequently fome of the fame Diateffaron must be formed by different Semitones, in regard to their Latitude. But after the happy Invention of Harmony, and the great Progress which Music has made, particularly from the last Century to this Day, it is now evident, and clearly demonstrated by Experience (as will appear in the following Books) that the Division of the Tones and Semitones into Major and Minor, is inconfistent both with Melody and Harmony, and never subfisted, but only in the Imagination of the Authors, which followed the first Division of the old Greek System of the first four Strings of the Lyre, and fucceffively of the feven Chords, called the conjoint Tetrachord, as has been done by Ptolomy, followed by Boetius, and by almost all the Authors which have treated of Music, till the present Time. But now in the prefent practical System of the Musical Sounds, all Sounds are divided by two Intervals, to wit, by equal Tones, and equal Semitones, these confidered as an half Part of the Tone; and the Tones being all divided into Semitones for Sake of the Transposition of the two principal Scales, confequently the original eight Sounds are augmented to the Number of thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve Intervals of a Semitone each, as will appear in the following Chapter.

CHAP.

# CHAP. III.

# Of the new Modern and General System of Sounds, and of the Names of its different Intervals.

#### ARTICLE I.

T is called a general System, because it comprehends all other Systems, Scales, I and Divisions; it is also called the new Modern System, to diffinguish it from that of *Guido*, which was called the Modern System, but now is called the old Modern System of *Guido*: This new Modern System is expressed in Example I. Plate VI.

The first lowest Sound of this System is C, which might properly be called A, being the first Letter of the Alphabet, as the *Romans* have already done to the first Sound of the *Greek* System: But as this Alteration would have changed all the old Notes or Letters applied to these Sounds in the Time of *Boetius*, and afterwards restrained by Pope *Gregory* (as mentioned in the Introduction) it has not been made either by *Guido*; or in the present new System; only the Order is different, by beginning with the Sound named C, instead of the Sound named A, as the *Romans* have done, or with the Sound G; as *Guido*.

From the Principal and lowest Note named C; to the Sound D, its following Note, is an Interval of one Tone; also from D to E, is a like Interval; but from E to F, there is only a Semitone; from F to G, the fifth Sound, from G to A, the fixth, and from A to B, the Seventh, is an Interval of a Tone each; and from B to C the eighth Sound, which is the Octave of the first principal Grave Sound of the System, is the Distance of a Semitone. This System being formed of five Tones and two Semitones, as is expressed in the first Example, Plate VI. above-mentioned:

#### Of the various Names to the different Intervals of the above System.

#### ARTICLE II.

**T** HE two Sounds, which are formed by the Interval of one Tone, is called a Major, or natural Second, as  $\widehat{C,D}$ .  $\widehat{D,E}$ .  $\widehat{F,G}$ .  $\widehat{G,A}$ . and  $\widehat{A,B}$ . as to  $\widehat{E,F}$ . and  $\widehat{B,C}$ . which are only diftant a Semitone; this Interval is called a Minor Second; the Whole of the Octave being composed of five natural Seconds and two Minor, which is the fame as five Tones and two Semitones, mentioned in the last Article: Two Semitones making a Tone; fo two Minor Seconds make a natural or Major Second.

Two major Seconds following each other, as C, D, E. make an Interval called the natural Sharp, or major Third  $C, E_i$ 

The Flat or Minor Third, is formed of one fecond Major and one Minor, as Maj. 1, 2 Min. Min. 1. 2 Maj. D, E, F, or E, F, G, making the Flat Natural, or Minor Third D, F, or E, G, or others like.

The fourth Sound F, being diftant from the Principal C, two Major Seconds and one Minor, or two Tones and one Semitone, is called the perfect Fourth, as being confonant with the Octave of the principal Note.

The

The tharp or falle Fourth, is composed of three Major Seconds, which is three Tones, as F to B, and are also called by Musicians, the Tritone.

Two Major Seconds, and two Minor, is the Interval called falfe or leffer Fifth, which is the fame as two Tones and two Semitones, or as the Tritone, as from B afcending to F.

The Interval of three Major Seconds and one Minor, or three Tones and one Semitone, as from the principal Note C to the fifth Note G, or from D to A, whatfoever other Sounds of a like Interval is called the perfect Fifth, which is confonant with its grave Sound, as has been explained in the Introduction.

The Interval from C to A, which is the fixth Sound of the System, or other like Interval, being formed by four Major Seconds and one Minor, or four Tones and one Semitone, is called the Major Sixth.

The Minor Sixth is composed with three Major Seconds and two Minor, or three Tones and two Semitones, as from E to C ascending, or other like Interval.

The feventh Sound in this System is B, which being distant from the Principal C five Major Seconds and one Minor, or five Tones and one Semitone, therefore is called Major or sharp Seventh, as all other like Intervals.

It is called Minor Seventh, when formed by four Major Seconds and two Minor, or four Tones and two Semitones, as from D alcending to the C acute, or from the fifth Note G to F, above the Octave, or other like Interval.

The last Sound of this System is the Eighth, which is called the Octave, and is the principal perfect Confonant after the Unifon; it is composed by five Major Seconds and two Minor, or five Tones and two Semitones. All the abovefaid Intervals are within the Compass of the Octave.

But there are fome larger Intervals, which paffes the Limits of the Octave; the first Two are called the Major and Minor Ninth; the Major is composed of fix Major Seconds and two Minor, or fix Tones and two Semitones, as from D grave to E acute in the superior Octave; the Minor is composed with five Major Seconds and three Minor, or five Tones and three Semitones, as from E grave to F acute of the second Octave.

The other fuperior Intervals of the following fuperior Octave, as the tenth, the eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth, are confidered as being the Repetition of the third, fourth, fifth, fixth, feventh, and eighth; and fometime both Ninths are confidered as Seconds in the Compositions of Figurate Music; but in the fundamental Harmony they are calculated at these proper Distances of ninth, tenth, eleventh, &c. and is only for the greater Facility of putting the simple Figures of the Sounds belonging to the first Octave, instead of the double Ones.

First N.B. Besides the above explained Intervals, there are some others, as the second superfluous or extreme Sharp; the superfluous Fifth, Sixth, and Octave; also the Seventh diminished, which not being concerned in the fundamental Harmony, will be explained in the last Book of the figurate Harmony, being all these Sort of Combinations inverted of the fundamental.

Second N.B. The falle Fifth before-mentioned, is the fame Interval as the falle Fourth; the Difference is only for the Sake of the Names. B, in afcending to F, must pals C,D,E. which in all are five primary Sounds, namely B, C, D, E, F. which are the proper affigned Names to their respective Sounds; and from F afcending to B, are only four primary Sounds,
Sounds, with these proper Names, F, G, A, B; one is called false Fifth, being a Semitone leffer than the perfect Fifth; and the other is called false, or Major Fourth, being composed of one Semitone more than the perfect Fourth; but both the faid Sounds are in the fame Diftance of fix Semitones, or three Tones, which is the fame, as it is evident, consequently the Sounds, being in the same Interval, the Difference is only in being transposed, the Grave in Acute, or vice versa; but their Progression is always the fame, ascending one, and descending the other,

Third N. B. All the above Intervals muft be diffinguished into confonant and diffonant: The Confonant are all the Unifons, Octaves, and perfect Fifths, as has been explained by Experience, in the Introduction, and all the other Intervals, as fecond, third, fourth, falfe fifth, fixth, feventh, Major and Minor, are diffonant, confequently cannot be called confonant, but only Harmonic; the First as confonant, being confidered as one Sound, cannot be called Harmonic, but only Melodic, and the diffonant, fo called, being diffinctly perceived by the Ears, when joined with the Confonant, made Harmonic the fame Confonant, as will clearly be explained in the Fifth Chapter of the Harmonic System.

Fourth N.B. The abovefaid diffonant, or Harmonic Sounds, must be confidered diffinctly, as Major, or sharp, and Minor, or flat, being their natural Progression different, the Major ascending, and the Minor descending; but this Rule is altered on divers Occasions, as will appear by the Canons in the next Book.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the Confonant Division of the System of Sounds, from which arises the Confonant System of Progression, or Modulation.

#### ARTICLE I.

T was defined in the first Chapter, Article IV. that Harmony confists in a Progreffion of diffimilar and diffonant Sounds combined together. These diffimilar wery Acute. The lowest Sound, which now becomes the Subject of this Article, is called the fundamental Bas, which is always supposed to be lower by one Octave, than the common Bass of the figurate Harmony; and by being founded to low, can only proceed by large and proportionate Intervals: Experience shews, that the Trumpets and Frenchborns, in the lowest Notes, can only proceed by Fifths or Fourths, whereas in the high Notes they may poceed not only by Tones; but also by Semitones; the fame must be fupposed in the fundamental Bass: Its most natural Progression is to rife or fall a Fifth, or a Fourth, which produce the fame; rifing a Fifth, is the fame as falling a Fourth, and rifing a Fourth, is the fame as falling a Fifth, as will be demonstrated in its proper Place, with Examples.

These two Movements, of Fifth descending, and of Fifth ascending, arise from the confonant Division of the general System of Sounds, by Means of the two middle Sounds, which divide the System in two equal Parts, as in Example II. Plate VI. namely, C, principal Sound to F, middle Sound; and G, also middle Sound to C Acute, the Octave of the Principal being both Parts composed of two Tones in the Grave, C, D, E, and a  $\frac{1}{2}$  1 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  2 1 2

27

28

the Acute Fourth, forming the perfect confonant Fifth to C principal Balis of the first Part; fo C the Octave, at the Top of the fecond Part, makes the confonant Fifth to F middle Sound, at the Top of the first Part, or Division.

From this Division arises our two fundamental Systems, General and Natural; the general passing through all the Semitones of the Scales of Transposition, and the natural through the eight original Sounds of the natural Scale. These two Systems of Progression are also called Consonant Systems, being formed by the two Consonant Fifths ascending and descending, or by the Fourths, which are the Inversion as before mentioned.

The first of the above two Systems which is described in Plate VII. is called general, because proceeding in its Course continually by perfect Fifths, it divides the Octave in all the Musical Sounds which ferve to Harmony, being thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve supposed Intervals. The other, which is also described in Plate VIII. is called the natural, because its Progression proceeds only on the eight Primary Sounds of the natural Scale, and in that Progression must be used one false Fifth, as will be explained in its proper Place.

The abovefaid four Notes, from which arifes their Thirds naturally fharp, are diffinguished from the reft of the Notes of the Octave, and commonly called the four principal Notesthereof; but in Reality only the first Note and the fifth are the two principal and fundamental Notes, because the first principal Grave Sound C, is the Productor of all the Sounds, in its Octave, and the fifth Sound G is the only Confonant to the principal C, and the fame G becomes the neceffary Guide of the Harmony in the Progression, fo, as by proceeding only by Skips of Fifths above or below, the Harmony passes fucceffively, not only the Primary Sounds of the natural Scale, but also these divided by Semitones, as before faid, as will be demonstrated in its proper Place.

The faid fifth Sound of the Octave is called the fandamental Guide, becaufe after having introduced the Combinations of Sounds into the different Tones and Semitones of the Scale, it reftores the fame Sounds, and their Combinations, to the first principal Note of the Scale. But in regard to the Interval of the fecond Fifth, between the other two Notes, F and C, the first Note F indeed is confonant with the Octave C Acute, which is its Fifth, but it is not confonant with the Confonant Grave C, being only diftant an Interval of a Fourth, which Experience shews, that it is not consonant, but diffonant, and confequently only Harmonic, as explained before. The Octave indeed is confidered in Harmony as the fame Sound of the principal; and this Reafon may affect both the fourth and the fifth, because they are neither of them consonant with both the Extremes of the Octave, but as the fifth C is confonant with C Grave the Principal, and the Octave C Acute is abforbed by the fame Grave Sound C, being evident (as has been demonstrated by Experience in the Introduction) that the Grave Sound abforbs all its Acute Confonant Sounds, confequently the Diftance, or Interval of one Fourth from G to C Acute, fubfifting, the Grave Sound C is not perceived, and for the fame Reafon the Confonant Fifth between F and the Octave C Acute, fubfifting, its principal C Grave is not perceived, but only the Interval of one Fourth, which is not confonant : For this Reafon only the Fifth is the Confonant Sound with its Grave and Principal.

Thefe two principal and fundamental Sounds, the Principal and its Fifth, muft be confidered as the original and firft Foundation of all the Combinations and Progreffions of the Sounds in their own Scale; and may both be ufed in Melody and Harmony, without changing their Place, as it is ufed by the Bagpipe, which keeps continually playing the principal Note, as the Foundation of Melody; and the confonant Fifth, which is the fundamental Guide of the Sounds of its own Scale, may alfo continually ferve for a ftable Foundation under all Combinations and Progreffions which can be formed in its Scale; as is commonly ufed in Cadences, particularly in Church-Mufic, in the laft and final Cadence, when the Pedal of the Organ being ufed upon that Occafion, which

is

#### Of the Composition of MUSIC.

is played with the Foot in one of the loweft fundamental fifth Sounds of the Organ, it is always kept firm under the Harmonic Progrefion of the Subject Melody, or Fugue, propofed in the Beginning, and repeated, as Epilogue, before the final Cadence, with both the Hands employed in the Harmonic Combinations and Progrefions of the faid Subject, till at laft it refolves into the Cadence. Therefore the above two Sounds, Principle and Guide, are called the two original, and ftable, or immoveable fundamental Sounds, being diffinguished by this Name from the other two fundamental Baffes deriving from the Motion of the fifth high and low, which Baffes are called the fundamental Baffes of the Progreffion of Harmony.

The two first immoveable, and the two last moveable Basses, are called fundamental. The two first continually founding the same Note, without any Regard to the Progression, and Combination of the superior Parts in the Course of the Octave: On the contrary, the other two follows the Harmony, conforming to the Rules of the fundamental Progression; therefore these two last Basses are the principal Object of this present System of Progression, or Modulation.

The two first Intervals in the superior Division of Example II. Plate VI. the first from the extreme Grave Sound C, to its fifth G, and middle Sound of the System; and from F, alfo middle Sound to C extreme Acute, both being of a perfect Fifth afcending, we call them the indeterminate imperfect Skips confonant of the Guide, namely, from the Principal, or from a Guide to another Guide, it is called indeterminate, becaufe by thefe Skips the Harmony cannot be terminated, except in some Instances, for the Sake of Expression; and it is also called imperfect, because from these Skips arise all the imperfect Irregulars, and fufpended Cadences, with other Imperfections, which will be demonstrated in the next Book. On the contrary, the other two Skips, as in the under Division of the fame Example II. Plate VI. from C above, to F below middle Sound, and from G alfo middle Sound, to C Grave below, both defcending with a perfect Fifth : Thefe, and all other of the fame Kind, we call them the terminate, perfect, confonant Skips of Cadences, that is from the Guide to the Principal, becaufe from these Sort of Skips arise all perfect, middle, and final Cadences, by which the Harmony is terminated, and it is called perfect, because it may be joined with the following Thirds to the Fifth; namely, the Seven and Nine, as will be explained in the next Book : But it must be distinguished, that when the Combination of the last Note is compounded, the Cadence is not terminated, because those abovefaid superior Third, which must be prepared in the antecedent Combination, wanted after to be refolved, and for that Reafon the last Note of the perfect terminate Cadence, must be of fimple Harmony, and not at all compounded by higher Thirds than the two which compose the Fifth, as will be demonstrated in the next Book.

First N.B. The fundamental Bass, proceeding by the imperfect confonant Skips of Guide, rifes continually, passing through all the Sounds of the Octave; on the contrary, with the perfect consonant Skip of Cadence, it falls continually, passing also all the Sounds of the Octave, as it is delineated in Example III. Plate VI.

Second N. B. It must be remembered, that when the Bass ascends a Fifth, it is the fame as defcending a Fourth; also defcending a Fifth, is the fame as ascending a Fourth, as before-mentioned; the fame is ascending a Third as defcending a Sixth, and defcending a Third, as ascending a Sixth, as in Example IV. Plate VI.

## Of two Harmonic Movements added to the two Confonant.

#### ARTICLE II.

TO the above two confonant Movements, have been added two other Harmonic Movements, viz. of a Third low, and the other of a Third high: Thefe two Movements, or Skips, are not abfolutely fundamental, the first of Third low deriving

29

from

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

from the perfect confonant Skip of Cadence, and the other of a Third high, from the imperfect Skip confonant of Guide, both ferving as Auxiliaries to the other two fundamental; therefore we call the first defcending a Third, the perfect auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third low; and the other afcending a Third high, the imperfect auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third high; they are both called Harmonic, being derived from the Motion of the Third, which is Harmonic, and not confonant, as will appear in the next Chapter : but the first Skip of a Third low is diftinguished by the Term perfect, as deriving from the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence, partaking of its Perfection. The other, on the contrary, is called imperfect, deriving from the imperfect confonant Skip of Guide, and alfo partaking of its Imperfections, as will clearly be demonstrated in the next Book.

With the two confonant Skips, and their two Auxiliars, the fundamental Bafs is able to perform all poffible Harmonic Progreffion; therefore we call it the true fundamental System of the faid Harmonic Progreffion.

## Of the Division of the fundamental Progression arising from the above System.

#### ARTICLE III.

T HE different Scales which arife from the feven Primary Sounds, excluding the Octave, as a Repetition of the first Sound, were diftinguished by fome Greeks, and by all the old Romans, as also by Guido and his Followers, in feven Species, which is the fame as to fay feven Octaves: The Difference of the feven Species was made by the different Situation of the Semitones, without any other Distinction; and the passing from one Species to another, was called Modulation, as the Greeks have called the passing from a Mode to another. This Word Modulation has continued, and still is continued by Mussicians; but in this Treatife it is called by the common Name Progression, which fignifies in Melody the moving from one Sound to another, and in Harmony, from many divers Sounds combined, to another different Combination, proceeding from one Place to another, in transposing the Scales, which Term Progression may be easily understood by all Sorts of People; with this Progression is formed all Sorts of Music.

This Progreffion is made in two different Manners, therefore we fhall diffinguish them in natural or fimple, and in mix'd or varied; the natural or fimple Progreffion, is only formed in the natural Scale, passing through its relative, and subordinate Scales, without changing the original Primary Sounds; and this Progreffion arises from the abovementioned natural System of Progreffion, as from the general System of Progreffion arise the Progreffion which we call mix'd or varied, because it transposes the Scales in every one of the Semitones, which divides the Primary Sounds, and by this Transposition is changed and altered the first Order of the Sounds, as will be clearly explained in the Articles of the particular different Scales.

First N.B. The general System of Progression before-mentioned, is formed by thirteen Scales, every one of which proceed by perfect Fifths descending or ascending; and in this Manner all the faid Scales are divided into thirteen Sounds by twelve Intervals of an equal Semitone, by the Progression of a perfect Fifth, and all the Sounds of a different Denomination formed by the two Motions of the Fifth, are diffinguished as is clearly expressed in Plate VII.

Second N. B. The other natural System of Progression is formed by eight Scales, which ferves to every one of the primary and original Sounds, all proceeding also by Fifths afcending and defcending; but because between the eight Primary Sounds, two of the fame are only in Distance of a Semitone, when the others are of a full Tone, as has been seen in the general System of Sounds; therefore, when the fundamental Bass moves from the second Semitone B, cannot proceed with a perfect Fifth, which in ascending is F sharp, which Note or Sound is not in the natural Scale, consequently must necessarily proceed proceed with a falfe Fifth to F natural. The fame in defcending with the fame Motion of a perfect Fifth, the Bass must also necessfarily proceed with a false Fifth from the Note F to B natural.

Third N. B. The above faid falfe Fifth is fupported in defcending by the perfect Skip of Cadence, but not in ascending with the imperfect Skip confonant of Guide, for the Reafons which will be demonstrated in the next Book.

Fourth N. B. The above Division of the Progression explained in this present Article, is one of the principal and necessary Notions for more easy attaining the compleat Knowledge of the whole Art.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the Harmonic Division of the System of Sounds, from whence arises the Harmonic System of Combination of Sounds, with its particular Divisions.

#### ARTICLE I.

HE Terms of Confonant and Harmonic were always used as fynonymous. The Thirds and Sixths, the Fifths and Octaves, have been, and at this very Time are, reciprocally called Confonant or Harmonic; only with the Diffunction of calling the Thirds and Sixths imperfect Confonant, not in regard to the Degree of Confonance, but because they may be altered into Major and Minor; and the Fifths and Octaves perfect confonant, because they cannot be altered. It feems very clear, that the Term Confonant fignifies two Sounds, which refemble each other, and being founded together, can fearcely be diffinguished, as it is demonstrated by Experience, in the Introduction: For which Reason a Progression made with a Combination of two Octaves, or two Fifths following each other in a Composition of two, or three Parts, are justly forbidden in Practice, because they are confidered as simple Sounds, without Harmony.

Harmony must be confidered as the Union or Combination of diffonant Sounds, which Word Diffonant fignifies, that there is heard two diftinct Sounds, as abovefaid, or, in vulgar Terms, a Combination of diffonant Sounds, diffinguistable by the Ear, as has been defined in the fourth Article of the first Chapter, for which Reason the fimple Fifths and Octaves cannot be Harmonic, particularly the Octaves, which being the more perfect confonant, is always absorbed and confounded with its Grave Sound; and, on the contrary, the other Intervals cannot be confonant, as mentioned in the antecedent Chapters; but the Fifth, when divided into two Parts by a middle Sound, it becomes Harmonic, being diffinguissed in and by two fucceflive Thirds, confequently if all the Sounds which compose their general System, were disposed in fucceflive Thirds, all the fame Sounds would become confonant and Harmonic, respectively from one Fifth to another; and in this Manner will be formed an Harmonic System disposed, as in Example VII. Plate IX.

But of all these Thirds, Experience shews, that only the first Third, which divides the fifth Sound from the Principal in two Thirds, is properly the original and effential Harmonic Sound; effential, because it divides the perfect Fifth, which is confonant, in two Thirds, confequently the Fifth becomes also Harmonic, as mentioned before, and original, because the first Third is the Root of the following other Thirds, and because an Air, Song, or Tune, may be composed for two Voices, or Instruments, with only Thirds Thirds, or Sixths, as is known by Practice; to which two Parts may be added a proper Bafs, which together, or without the Bafs, will make an agreeable Harmony, and give great Pleafure to the Ear; which is not poffible to be done with only the Combination of Fifths, and Octaves; and because the fundamental Bass is always joined with its confonant Fifth, which Fifth, when it is divided by the Third, making two Thirds, one Major, and one Minor, and being added to the Octave of the Principal, Fifth, and Third, in this Combination are composed all the Primary Sounds Harmonic, with the two confonant; namely, the two Thirds Major and Minor, by which is formed the Fifth and the Fourth, from the Fifth to the Octave; also the two Sixths, Major and Minor, the Major between the fifth G, and the Octave of the first third E; and the Minor between the fame third E, and the Octave of the principal C. This Combination, which is the Root of all Combinations compound, and full, make one fimple Accord, by which may be made a Counterpoint fundamental in fix real Parts, and in figurate Mufic in eight Parts, by only the Inversion of this simple fundamental Accord, which Composition will be agreeable, without the Combination of any superior Thirds, as Seventh, Ninth, &c. by Muficians called Falfes, or Difcords. And fo far as regards the Combination of the above fuperior Thirds, Experience flews, that they cannot be added abruptly, being not agreeable to the Ear, for being fo diftant from their principal and fundamental Ground; but when introduced by the fimple Accord fundamental, which is, as before told, their very Origin, or, in the Musician's Term, well prepared, will much improve and augment the Pleafure thereof.

From the above Reafons it is manifeft, that the natural Harmonic Syftem of the Combination of Sounds, arifes only from the Harmonic Division of the general System of the fame Sounds into fucceflive Thirds, which being composed of the eight natural and original Primary Sounds, confequently produces eight Harmonic Scales disposed, as in Plate WH9Example VII.

From the Order of the Division in the above Example, it is apparent, that this System produces three Major Thirds, and four Minor, which are not only Harmonic one with another, but also consonant at the same Time with their Fifth below, and above. The first Third of the general System of Sounds, is the Note E, which is Harmonic with C, the Principal, and with G, the fifth Sound of the general System, and is consonant with B, the seventh Sound, B being its perfect Fifth.

The fecond Third G is confonant with its Principal, and with D its Fifth above, and Harmonic with E below, and B above.

B, the third Third, and the feventh Sound of the Octave, is Harmonic with G below, and D above, and is confonant with E, its Fifth below, but is not confonant with F above, it being a falfe Fifth, composed of fix Semitones, therefore is diffonant and only Harmonic.

D, the fourth Third in the first Harmonic Scale, is Harmonic with B and F, and confonant with G below, and A above.

F, the fifth Third, is confonant with C above, Octave of the Principal, but not with B, its Fifth below, which is false, as above faid, confequently it is only Harmonic; and it is also Harmonic with D and A, its Third below and above.

The last third A of the fame first Harmonic Scale, is conformant with D below, and E above; and Harmonic with C and F, its Thirds above and below.

As the fundamental Bass in all its Progressions, must be joined with its two consonant Sounds, the Fifth, and Octave, to which it is necessary to add the Third, without which

## Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

which the Accord, or Combination, is only confonant, and not Harmonic, as before explained; therefore all the Art of combining the Sounds, confifts in keeping firm, one, two and three Sounds, which composes the original, fimple Combination, in the antecedent Combination fimple, or compound, that may be, which Sound, by the fucceeding Motion of the fundamental Bafs, are changed into the fuperior Thirds (called falfe by the Muficians) and afterwards in the fubfequent Motions of the fame Bafs, they must be again introduced by a proper Refolution into one of the three Sounds of the fimple Accord, with the Third, Fifth, or Octave. This is all which may ferve for a general Solution of the Mystery of the Combination of Sounds, fo confounded, and intricate, as commonly it is fuppofed to be.

The Method and Order of all the poffible Combinations of Sounds, in every poffible, Progreffion, will be demonstrated by the Canons of the Harmonic Code, in the next Book, and clearly explained with all their different Diffinctions and Exceptions.

## Of the Division of the Combination of Sounds.

#### ARTICLE II.

THE Combination of Sounds is an Agreement of three, four, five, or more Sounds altogether, difposed in the Order of the Harmonic System, as third, fifth, seventh, ninth, &c.

It is divided into three different Kinds of Combination, which we call the first fimple, the fecond compound, and the last the full Combination: This Division is also necessary for attaining the Knowledge of the Harmonic Art.

The fimple Combination is composed of the first and fecond Third, which makes the perfect Fifth to the fundamental Bafs, in whatfoever Scale, as in the Disposition of the Harmonic System, and with or without the Octaves, and the double Notes, it is called common Chord, or perfect Accord, by Musicians.

The compound Combination is made by adding one, or two, of the fuperior Thirds' to the two first; as the feventh and ninth, or the eleventh and thirteenth; which two last are commonly marked fourth and fixth, for the Facility of using the simple Figures, instead of the double ones.

The full Combination is fo call'd, when to the above compound Combination are added one or two Thirds more, fo as to be united to all the fuperior Thirds, which compose the Harmonic Scale.

The refpective Thirds, which compose the Compound, or full Combination, are marked with Figures under, or over, the Bass Notes, as may be seen in some Canons in the next Book, and in some Examples in the last Book. These Figures denote the divers superior Thirds concerned in the Combination to the Bass Note; for Example, the first Third above the Fifth, being the seventh Sound, is marked with a 7, the following third Note with a 9; but the other superior Thirds to the ninth, which are the eleventh and thirteenth, are marked thus, 4th and 6th, for the Facility of the seventh Figures, as mentioned before.

The fimple Combination has no Occasion for Figures, having no superior Third to the first two, which compose the Fifth.

These fuperior Thirds which compose the Compound, and full Harmony, cannot fubfift in the Beginning, or in the first Combination of the Composition, which must be

ümple,

fimple, with only the Third, Fifth, and Octave, this Combination being the Productor of the following compound Accord, as before told; and the fame fimple Combination must be adapted in the same Beginning to the principal Note of the Scale, in which the Composition of the Music is composed, except by some Accident, for the Sake of some particular Expression, by which the Composer may be obliged to begin the Composition with the compound Combination of the fundamental Guide of the chosen Scale, and ordinarily and particularly in the Composition of Recitatives and Airs of a pathetic Nature, and grave Time; in which Sort of Combination, the principal Note of the Bass is almost always omitted, and its compound Accord is supposed prepared by the supposed antecedent Accord, notwithstanding it is not expressed; but this happens very feldom, and almost never in gay Movements. Neither can the fame fuperior Thirds fubfift in the final, perfect Cadences, where, in two or three Parts, the fame final Cadence must be only in Confonance, namely, with only the Octaves, and in four Parts may be joined the fifth; in five or more Parts the faid Cadences may be Harmonic, namely, with the Addition of the third, becaufe in five Parts the fundamental Sound, and its Fifth, becomes doubled by their Octaves; fo the third Sound, which is the first Harmonic, and confequently the more fenfible, being not doubled, cannot opprime the confonant Sounds, when they are doubled.

This muft be obferved, that when the Scale is with the Major Third, this fame fharp Third muft not be in the extreme Part acute of the Combination, but in the Middle, or near the Middle, all fharp diffonants being the moft fenfible. For the above Reafons, the fimple Combination may be called the terminate Accord, and the compound, or full Combination, which properly belongs to the fifth Note of every Scale, being its fundamental Guide, muft be called the indeterminate Accord, or Combination, becaufe the compound, or full Combination, neceffarily requires a fubfequent Combination for its Refolution into the perfect fimple Combination, in which only the Harmony may be terminated.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the different Scales, their different Use, and their Distinction.

#### ARTICLE I.

HERE are many Scales arifing from the general System of Sounds, belonging to Harmony, and alfo to Melody; but only one is the Principal, which is the true Copy of the very fame general System, and it is the Spring of all other Scales, Divisions, and other Systems; therefore it is called the Principal Scale, and it is alfo called the Natural Scale, as being derived properly from Nature, being analogous to the human Voice, and to Senfation, which Voice cannot naturally and eafily alcend, or defcend all the Degree of the Scale, without mixing the Tones with Semitones; and if any Perfon will try to afcend or defcend by fucceflive equal full Tones, he will find it very difficult; and our Senfations take no Notice of any Sound of a leffer Interval than of a Semitone; confequently this principal Scale is in its proper and most natural Order, rifing from the lowest to the highest Sound, and defcending without any accidental Note:

To the above principal, and natural Scale, another Scale different may be joined alfo as Principal; and is called the Scale of the minor Mode, or of the flat Third by Muficians: This Scale has hitherto been known but imperfectly, the Order of their Sounds being confidered not different from the Order of ours fubordinate, and relative Scales to the Principal, and it is not a long Time it has been accommodated as a principal one, by the Practice of the Muficians; for this Reafon, and to diffinguish it more properly from the other other principal natural Scale, it is called in this Treatife the Artificial Scale: The Difference of these two principal Scales will be explained in their respective Articles.

Befides the above two principal Scales, there are two more, which may be confidered as principal; these two Scales arise from the confonant Division of the general System of Sounds explained in the antecedent fourth Chapter; namely one from the Progression of the confonant fifth ascending, as F to C, G to D,  $\mathcal{C}c$ . and the other from the confonant fifth descending, as from G to C, C to F; F to B flat,  $\mathcal{C}c$ . from whence arises the Division of the natural Scale in thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve Intervals, each of one Semitone, but in two different Manners, by which are formed the two Scales, one ascending and the other descending; but the Diversity of these two Scales relates only to the Denomination of the Sounds themselves, which are the fame under different Names; confequently the two Scales may be confidered as only one, called by Mussicians the Scale of Semitones; the Use of which is for transposing the natural and artificial Scales higher or lower, as will be explained in their different Articles.

From the other two Scales, the natural and the artificial, arifes their proper relative and fubordinate Scales, and from the other two of Transposition, their different transposed Scales, which Scales will be explained all fucceffively.

Befides the above Scales, there are many others, which ferve only for the Melody of the Parts, as is fhewn in the laft Article but one, belonging to this Chapter, and delineated in Example XVII. Plate XVI.

Of the Principal Natural Scale.

## ARTICLE II.

THIS Scale, which, as has been faid, is the very Copy of the General System of Sounds, and the Mother Scale, is composed of a Major Second from C to D; of a Major Third from C to E; of a perfect Fourth from C to F; of a perfect Fifth from C to G; of a Major Sixth to A; a Major Seventh to B; and from the fame C to C Acute, an Octave, as has been explained in the General System of Sounds. But as the fundamental Bass, with its different Movements, may pass through all the eight Sounds of the Scale; therefore every Sound must have its proper Scale disposed into an Octave, to distribute to the different Motions of the fame fundamental Bass, its proper and respectively different Combinations.

These Scales are formed with the fame Sounds of their principal Scale, natural or transposed, as may be; and as the principal natural Scale is formed by eight Sounds, therefore there arises eight Scales, seven of which are the relative Scales, and fubordinate to the first principal Scale, as in Example VIII. Plate X. namely, the Scales of D, E F, G, A, B, and C Acute; this last having its Sounds in the same Order as the Principal, is confidered as a Repetition of its first Principal; but, on some Occasions, must be also considered as relative, as will be explained in its proper Place; the other fix are the proper Relatives, having their Sounds disposed in different Order of the first Principal, as it is in the above-mentioned Example VIII. Plate X.

# Of the Relative Scales arifing from the Natural Scale, and of their respective Order to the same.

## ARTICLE III.

THE first Scale in the above Example VIII. Plate X. is the principal Scale natural, which has its Sounds disposed, as has been explained in the antecedent Articles. The following fecond Scale is the Scale of D, which is the first Relative, and has the Fourth and Fifth both perfect, but differs from the Principal in the first Third, and Seventh, both Minor.

The third Scale E, has also the Fourth and Fifth perfect, but the first Second is Minor, and confequently its first Third Minor, as also the Sixth and Seventh both Minor.

The fourth Scale F, is only different from the Principal in the fourth Note B, which is a false Fourth.

The fifth Scale G, is the fame as the Principal, except the feventh, which is Minor.

The fixth Scale A, has the Fourth and Fifth perfect, but the Third, Sixth, and Seventh, are Minor.

The feventh, which is the Scale of B, has its Fifth falle, and differs from the Principal in its Second, Third, Sixth, and Seventh, being all Minor.

The eighth Scale is the fame as its Principal, being its Acute Eccho, but may be confidered as relative on fome Occafions, as below will be explained.

The above fix Scales, D, E, F, G, A, B, not only differ from the Principal, but also from each other.

The two Scales of E and B are the most imperfect, E being deprived of its proper Guide, which should have been B, if it might have its Fifth perfect, which is false, as mentioned; and B cannot be properly a relative principal Sound, for the same Reason of being deprived of its own perfect Fifth: Therefore these two Scales cannot subsist in natural Progression, but with some Limitations, as will appear in the next Book.

First N. B. It was mentioned, that the two extreme Sounds of the Confonant Division of the general natural System of Sounds, C, C, and the two middle, F, G, are commonly confidered as the four principal Sounds of the Octave, following the first Opinion of *Pythagoras*, which after accidentally hearing the Harmonic Noise of the above four Sounds expressed by four Hammers, as is afferted by the common vulgar History; and after weighing the four Hammers, and making many Experiments with hanged and stretched Strings, he fixed the Ratios of the Intervals, which he supposed to be betwixt the Sounds of the above Quadruple, for exemplifying to the human Understanding the Difference between the Gravity and Acuteness of the Musical Sounds.

But of the above four Sounds are only two which properly may be confidered as principal, in Point of Progreffion (as mentioned in Chap. IV. Article I.) C Acute, is only the Repetition of the principal Grave C, and the fourth Sound F has its fourth Sound imperfect, and falfe in B, therefore the Harmony cannot proceed in the natural Scale with the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence, from the fame F to B, without Preparation, but only from F to C Acute, with the Confonant imperfect Skip of Guide, being the Acute C, its perfect Fifth. But G, the fifth Sound of the Scale, being the perfect Fifth of the principal C Grave, the Octave of which makes its perfect Fourth above, and the fame G falling directly into the principal C, with the Confonant perfect Skip of Cadence, muft be confidered as the only fundamental Guide of the Scale, having, in its fundamental Combination, the two Harmonic indictive Notes, the Major Third, and the Minor Seventh (as before told) the other Confonant perfect skips, which happen in the Progreffion of the Harmony in the fame natural Scale, as D A, or E B, and A E, can only ferve as relative or fubordinate Guides.

C, the Octave of the Principal, (as before mentioned) may become, in the Progression

of

of Harmony, the Guide to F, into which it falls directly, as G to C principal, but becaufe F cannot be a principal Sound of the Scale, having the falfe fourth B, and C Acute, as Guide, is deprived of its indicative Minor Seventh; confequently ferves only for a relative Guide to F, and F only is fubprincipal relative in the natural, or fimple Progreffion.

By confidering the two indicative Notes, all the Sounds are eafily diffinguished from their principal Sound of the Scale, and from their fundamental Guide.

G, the fundamental Guide, is not different in its Scale from the principal C, only in the feventh Note, which is Minor, deriving from the perfect Fourth of the Scale; and this feventh Note muft be Minor, which is a neceffary Condition appertaining to all fundamental Guides, and may also be called the fundamental Seventh, to diffinguish them from the Sevenths of the relative Guides.

The third of every fundamental Guide, which is B in the natural Scale, and naturally fharp, which must be always sharp in all the fundamental Guides of the different principal Scales, may also be called fundamental Thirds.

The above two Notes, the Third Major, and Minor Seventh, of the fundamental Guides, being the Notes which indicate the approaching of the principal Note of the Scale, may alfo be called the Harmonic, fundamental, indicative Notes; namely, Major Third Indicative afcending, and the Minor Seventh defcending Indicative. The Indicative afcending ferves to both the natural and artificial Scales, and their transposed Scales; and the Indicative ferves only to the natural Scale, and its transposed Scales, for to diffinguish them from the artificial, and its transposed Scales (as more clearly will be explained in the following Article of the Scale artificial.)

The Major Third accending, goes directly to the principal Sound of the Scale, and the Indicative Seventh Minor defcends directly to the Major Third of the Principal, each of them proceeding by Semitones, which is the florteft Way, and confequently the most natural, both Notes leading into the first fimple Combination of the principal Note of the Scale, with a contrary Motion.

The falfe Fifth between the Major Third, and Minor Seventh, may also be called the Harmonic Indicative Minor Fifth; and the two Notes being inverted, becomes the Indicative Harmonic Major Fourth.

Second N. B. It was mentioned at the Beginning of the first Article of this Chapter, that the natural Scale is the Spring, or the very Mother of all Sorts of Systems, or Scales, that may be formed with the Musical Sounds; and we have seen first arising the Scales relative, and the artificial Scale; also the Scales of Transposition. Now we shall see that the System of Combination of Sounds arises also from the scale.

The natural Scale, which makes with its Scales relative a perfect Quadrate, as appears in Example VIII. Plate X. forms the Harmonic Scale with the Diagonal, which defcends from the firft Scund C, to the laft C in the opposite Angle; from the firft C it passes to the firft harmonic third E, from the third to the fecond G, which is the fifth of the firft principal, from G it passes to B, the third Third of the Harmonic Scale, and feventh of the firft Principal; from B it passes to D, which is the fourth Third of the fame Harmonic Scale, and the ninth of the natural; from the ninth it passes to the eleventh Note of the natural Scale, and the fifth Third of the Harmonic, from the eleventh to the thirteenth, and from that to the fifteenth, the last, which are the fixth and feventh Thirds, which forms the Harmonic Scale, and all Laterals of the above first Diagonal are disposed by Thirds, and the opposite Diagonal, with its Laterals, gives all the Octave, which is the general Magazine, not only of the Musical Sounds; but also of all possible others.

Third

Third N.B. From the above fystem of combination of founds, which also makes a perfect quadrate with the scales of every one of these founds, is manifested the natural system of progression, also by its first diagonal descending to the opposite angle, proceeding always by fifths, as is to be seen in example VII. plate IX. the opposite diagonal, and its laterals, gives also the octave, and from the diagonal and its laterals, the system of the scale octave, as is to be seen in example VI. plate VIII. all that confirms the new two systems of the combination of founds, and of their progression.

## Of the Artificial Scale, commonly called the Scale of the Minor Mode, or the Flat Third.

#### ARTICLE IV.

WE have feen in the Introduction, that the old Greeks have begun their first scale with only four founds, disposed in four strings of their lyre, by the intervals of femitone, tone and tone; afterwards, for the benefit of their voice, were augmented with three other founds, by three other ftrings added to the lyre, in all feven ftrings, with which was formed their diatonic fystem, or scale, and the two tetrachords conjoined, which tetrachords being not fufficient for the different voices high and low, were augmented to five tetrachords disposed in fixteen strings, which together was called the greatest, and unchangeable fystem. Aristoxenes distinguished his fifteen modes by tetrachords (which properly are diateffaron) each diftant a femitone, one from another) dividing the octave in twelve femitones. Guido Aretino, not finding the tetrachords of the Greek proper for the harmony, he added to each tetrachord two founds in the grave, by which he formed his hexachords, as are all diffinctly explained in the above Introduction. From all which \* it feems very clearly, that the Greeks, old Romans, and Guido, with all his followers, have not known other fcales than those producted by their tetrachords and hexachords, without any diftinction : Moreover, the first diatonic scale, with the addition of the chord proflambanomenos, was divided in feven species, as before-mentioned, in four species the fifths, and in three species the perfect fourth, with confidering only their distinction and difference by the different fituation of their femitone, confequently without the notion of the principal scale, nor in the major mode, nor in the minor mode; and being transposed, the octaves, and their species, were always confidered in the same order of their tetrachords and hexachords. The different modes and melody of the Greeks and Romans never forted from the tetrachords, but only passing from one to another; and the harmony of Guido never paffed his hexachords, only paffing from one to another, all without changing the chords of the greatest and unchangeable fystem, excepting in the occasion of the three genders and their colours, for which the Greeks were obliged to change the order of their tetrachords with two moble, and two stable strings, as explained in the Introduction.

But by the gradual progress of the harmony, it now is perfectly clear, that one natural fcale muft fubfift, and it is the principal; and also another fcale different in the order of their founds from the first principal, which fecond fcale muft be confidered as a principal one, which is here named the artificial fcale, being perfectly accommodated, and fucceffively accomplished by the art, in imitation of the first principal natural, in regard to the manner of afcending the octave, but different in its third found. This artificial fcale may be applied to every found of the natural fcale; but in this treatife it is applied to the fcale of C, with minor third, because the first principal fcale being in C with major third, may more 'easily be known the difference between each other.

The effential difference between the natural and this artificial fcale, are as follows. The first third in the natural fcale is major, or naturally sharp, but in this artificial fcale, is minor, or flat. The fecond found, or note, of both scales, is distant a major second, or full tone, which

38

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

which is a neceffary condition in all the principal feales, as it is the perfect fourth and fifth; and as the natural scale has its fourth note, with its third major, being the fame fourth, the fubprincipal relative note of the fame natural fcale, as before-mentioned, this artificial scale has also the third of the fourth note flat, the like hath its principal note: But because all fundamental guides must have their thirds sharp, as their indicative notes, for to pass to the principal note, which sharp thirds are the seventh major, or sharp, in the order of their principal scales; and as it is not possible to pass gradually from the minor, or flat fixth, to the major feventh, being diftant three femitones, which properly is an interval of a minor third, confequently art has been obliged to change the minor fixth into the major fixth, in order to help the melody, in afcending gradually to the major feventh, which major feventh becomes the neceffary indicative fharp third of the fundamental guide, in order also to ascend gradually to the octave of the principal note. On the contrary, in defcending from the fame Octave to the principal note, or only to the fourth note of the fcale, which (as has been faid) must have its third flat, like its principal, the above major third of the fundamental guide must be changed into a flat seventh of the scale, in order to defcend gradually to the fixth note, which also must be changed into a flat, to become a flat third to the above fourth note of the scale, which being the subprincipal relative, must have its third flat, as above-mentioned. This occasions two different scales, one for afcending, and the other for defcending, which two fcales happens only in the fcale of the principal, and of the guide, the other relative scales are not changed, as may be seen in example IX. Plate XI. and the above two different scales of the principal, and its guide, ferve only for the melody of the parts, and of the bass, when it is not fundamental, as often happens in figurate and comon mufic : For example, the common bafs defcending gradually from the octave to the guide, it may pass either by the feventh and fixth major, or minor at pleafure; but when the fame common Bafs makes the accent in the fixth note descending (as above-faid) from the octave, in this case both the fixth and seventh must be minor; but this minor fixth may afterwards be changed at pleafure, when the accented note is not fhort, in major fixth, before descending to the fundamental guide, which guide must have its major indicative third, as mentioned before. These different accords, or combinations, will be demonstrated in the last Book, which treats of figurate mufic; the fundamental bass being not concerned in the combination, arising from the gradual movement of the common bass, which combinations are almost all inverted from the fundamental combinations.

N. B. It has been mentioned, that the major third and the minor feventh, in the combination of the fundamental, guide of the natural scales, and its transposed scales, may be called fundamental, and harmonic indicative third, and feventh, to diffinguish them from the thirds and fevenths of the relative Guides, and because they indicate the approach of their principal scale by ascending the third to the same principal, and the seventh descending to the major natural third of their principal scale the natural, and the transposed scales; both proceeding by femitones by contrary motion. But in the artificial fcale, and its transposed scales, where the first third is flat, consequently the fourth Note of the same scales, which become fevenths in the combination of their guides, refolving after into the flat third by defcending a full tone, inftead of a femitone, as in the natural scale; for this reason the third of this artificial scale, being minor, cannot clearly be indicated by the same seventh minor by defcending a full tone; becaufe, for example, fuppoling the above artificial fcale being C, with flat third, its guide G, with its feventh minor F, defcending to E flat, the fame is done in the scale of E flat by the same note F, as fifth of its guide, B flat descending also to the same E flat, and notwithstanding that F descends into the principal note, as fifth of its guide; and in the scale of C the same F descends as seventh of the Note G guide into the third flat of the scale, is not clearly perceived as indicative seventh : Therefore inftead of the fame feventh, the ninth minor to the guide, which is a minor third above the minor feventh, and a minor fecond above the octave, or double octave of the principal note, becomes by way of supplement the harmonic fundamental, and indicative note, falling" by

by a femitone into the perfect fifth of the fcale; and the fame ninth being flat, which in the natural fcale is major, determines the artificial fcale of minor third by defcending in contrary motion of the indicative third, which afcends to the principal note of the fcale, in the fame time that the ninth defcends to the fifth, as abovefaid.

## Of the relative Scales to their principal artificial Scale.

#### ARTICLE V.

A L L the relative scales to this artificial scale are different from their principal scale, and also from each other, as may be seen in Ex. IX. Plate XI.

In the antecedent Ex. VIII. Plate X. of the natural fcale with its relatives, the third fcale, which begins in E, and the feventh fcale B, are the most imperfect, as has been mentioned: But in the artificial fcale the most imperfect in their relatives are the fcales of D and A. The scale of D, which is the second scale in the above example, and the first of the relatives, has the false fifth A flat, and the fixth scale of A flat, which is the fifth of the relatives, has the falfe fourth D, and this is an effential difference between the two principal scales, the natural and the artificial; the natural scale having the false fourth between the fourth note and the feventh; and the falle fifth, between the fame feventh note and the octave of the fame fourth note; and the artificial fcale has the falfe fifth between the fecond found, or note of its scale, and its fixth found, and the octave of the fecond note; but in the artificial fcale may be changed the falfe fifth, and falfe fourth into perfect on fome particular occasions, as will appear in the canons of the harmonic code in the next book; and for the fame reafons before given, the two fcales relative D and A flat of the artificial scale, as the other two, F and B, in the natural scale, cannot be freely ufed in harmony, but with fome limitations and exceptions, as will appear in the fame canons of the harmonic code.

The two principal notes, the principal and its principal guide, have both two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, as above-mentioned; the difference between the other relatives is clearly apparent in the above Ex. IX. Plate XI. and the fame explanation done for the relatives of the natural fcale, may be applied to these of the artificial fcale, in the fame Ex. IX. Plate XI.

## Of the transposing Scales.

#### ARTICLE VI.

TWO are the fcales of transposition, both arising from the two fundamental confonant movements of the perfect fifth alcending, and defending, which we would be a set of the perfect fifth alcending and defending which are the set of the perfect. movements of the perfect fifth afcending, and defcending, which movements gives thirteen founds, divided by twelve intervals of a femitone each; and notwithstanding that from the two above motions of afcending and defcending, there arifes two fcales, thefe two scales are composed of the same sounds, but of a different denomination, as may be feen in Ex. X. Plate XII. in the first line of this example is described the ascending progreffion, and the defcending in the fecond line : The afcending progreffion begins with the note F afcending to C, and the defcending progression begins with the note B; which two notes, F and B, being the two indicative notes of the natural fcale, one defcending and the other afcending, in contrary motion, gives first the feven primary founds, before they pass to those, which divides successively all the tones of the octave in two semitones. By the first scale ascending are produced the notes of the sharp denomination, and by the other descending, those of the flat denomination, as it is explained in the same above example. These different notes marked sharp and flat, before mentioned, are the same founds, but only different in their denomination, and in their natural place in the scale; For example, in the afcending fcale the note D fharp paffes to A fharp its perfect fifth; this

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

this A sharp must be noted in the fame place, where is noted A natural, only with the addition of the fharp fign: In the other defcending fcale the note F naturally defcends to B flat, being its perfect fifth; this B flat must be noted in the place of B natural, with the addition of the flat fign b, but these different places and names change not the found; the reason of it is evident; for D sharp to A sharp is an interval of five sounds, with their proper names and places; fo from F descending to its fifth B flat, this B flat cannot be named A fharp, nor A fharp B flat, being both fix names to fix confecutive notes in the place of their proper scales; from this Reason it is apparent, that the signs of sharpand flat b, are only necessary to put the founds with their proper names in their proper place of their different fcales. The fign of that augments the found of an equal femitone; fo A fharp being augmented of one femitone, is the fame found as B flat, diminished a femitone from B natural, but named and put in the place proper to their particular fcales: The fame happens in all other fharps and flats. All this will appear very clear in the explanation of fome equivocal accord, which will be done in the laft book; where will be demonstrated, that with only a fimple compound accord, the harmony may pass into divers opposite scales sharp and flat; and that will be the last evidence of the unsubsistance of the division of tones, and femitones into major and minor. From the above two scales afcending and defcending, arife two other fcales proceeding gradually by femitones, as are difpofed in Example XII. Plate XII. Theie two scales are properly the scale of transposition, into every degree of which two scales, both the natural and artificial scales, may be transposed.

The founds of these two scales of transposition are also the same, but of different denomination, as those of the other two principal scales arising from the motion of the fifth, before explained; confequently both these two scales may be confidered as one, notwithflanding the divers positions, and names, as is commonly done by the musicians.

N. B. The figns of fharp and flat b, when they are put in the beginning of the composition immediately after the fign of the key, and before the fign of time, which rules the measure, fignifies that the fcale is not natural, but artificial, or transposed from the natural, because the natural has its sound without any of the above figns; and when the same figns are accidentally put betwixt the composition, the sharp indicates that the note is transposed a femitone higher, and the flat a femitone lower, consequently the state becomes changed by the same figns, namely, more acute by the sharp, and more lower by the flat.

## Of the Scales transposed from the Natural Scale.

#### ARTICLE VII.

A<sup>S</sup> the principal natural fcale may be transposed into every one of the thirteen founds of the fcales of transposition, confequently every transposed fcale must have their founds transposed into the fame order of their original mother fcale; and being thirteen founds, from which must be abstracted the extreme acute, being confidered as a repetition of the fame natural fcale, but higher, remains twelve founds, which must have their proper fcale, to which is added five more of a different denomination; the twelve fcales arising from the afcending fcale of transposition, and the five of different denomination from the other defcending fcale, as are all defcribed in Example XIV. Plate XIII.

The first scale is the first original scale, the second is the fame original scale transposed a femitone higher, the third is transposed a tone higher, the fourth three semitones higher; and so of the rest, proceeding higher by semitones. All these scales may be used, but fome of different denominations are more eligible than others: For example, in the ninth scale of the above Example XIV. Plate XIII. which represents the scale of G sharp, in order to ascend the octave, must be used the note F, double sharp, which is marked thus (X) commonly, but improperly called dies enarmonic, and in *English* extreme states the properest term: But in ascending to the same octave G sharp by the

 $\mathbf{M}$ 

other

other scale under the denomination of A flat, which represents the found as G sharp, consequently of the same scale, there is not occasion of any double, or extreme sharp, as is apparent from the opposite scale to the above ninth scale, which is the fourth scale in those of different denominations in the same above example, for which reason the fourth scale of D sharp, is absolutely improper to be chosen, having two notes double sharp F x, and G x, consequently the scale of E flat, which contains the same source of G scale to be used. The seventh scale of F scale of F scale of G scale to be used. The seventh scale of F scale of B scale, having three notes extreme scale, but in changing the denomination to B flat, which is composed of the same source of A scale of A scale of the scale of A scale of the scale of A scale of A scale of A scale of A scale of B 
## Of the Transposition of the Artificial Scale.

### ARTICLE VHI.

THE artificial fcale, as before faid, has two different fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, every one forming thirteen fcales transposed from the principal, from which may be deducted the last fcale, being composed of the fame founds, but one octave higher, therefore must be confidered only twelve, with five more of different denominations, but being two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, as beforementioned, the fame twelve fcales, and the five of different denomination, are augmented to twenty-four, and ten more of a different denomination, which are divided in two examples, as may be feen in Example XV. and XVI. Plate XIV. and XV. the first of which belongs to the afcending fcale, and the other to the fcale defcending, every one of them having joined their fcales of different denomination.

The fame explication, which was made use of in the transposed feales from the natural, will be fufficient for these two examples of the transposition of the artificial scale, the principal difference being in having its first third flat, and the second third, which forms the perfect fifth, consequently sharp, contrary to the natural scale, which hath the first third sharp, and the second flat, as has been explained; only it must be remembered to chuse always that scale which is the easiest, avoiding the double sharps, or double flats, notwithst and the variety which adorns this art, it must be attended with the greatest facility.

Of the Number of the different Scales arising from the two Scales of Transposition.

#### ARTICLE IX.

**F** ROM the two principal fcales of transposition in Example XIV. Plate XIII. and Examples XV. and XVI. Plates XIV. and XV. arifes twelve principal fcales, all transposed from the natural fcale, with five more of a different denomination, as has been explained in the feventh article ; and because the artificial is diffinguished by two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, this occasions twenty-four transposed fcales, twelve from defcending, and twelve from afcending, with ten more of different denomination, which together amounts to thirty-four fcales, which being joined with the twelve fcales, and from the whole fifty-one fcales, all principal; and every one of those principal fcales having their proper feven relative fcales, which joined all together are three hundred and fifty-feven relatives, which joined with the interval in the whole to four hundred and eight, fcales, almost all of them being ufeful to the harmonic art, in the way of variety.

42

N. B.

N. B. The muficians have commonly given, and still give indifferently, the names of key, tone, or mode, to the scales of sounds; but these equivocal terms in this treatise have been distinguished.

The name of key fignifies properly the fign or mark, which is put before the feales belonging to the melody of the different parts, as the key of C, or F, or G, belonging to middle, low, or high parts, as fopranos, contraltos, tenors, and baffes.

The term tone has properly been applied to the intervals existing betwixt two founds, which gradually follow one another in the fcale, as between C, D, or D, E, &c. and is called femitone, when the distance or interval is not a full tone, as E, F, or B, C.

And the name mode, which is the less equivocal, fignifies properly a certain particular manner of finging, as mode or manner, *French*, *Scotch*, *Polones*, or *Sicilian*, just as the *Greeks* did in their modes *Ionic*, *Doric*, &c.

For the above reafons these equivocal terms have been diffinguished throughout the whole of this treatife; and instead thereof we have used only the proper term of scale, which properly signifies a feries of sounds in an order gradually disposed from grave to acute, or vice versa; and without any further explanation, it may be understood by all who will, or can understand it, and the other terms applied source, as above explained, namely, the word key, to the different scales of inclody, the other word tone to the intervals, and mode, as manner.

## Of the different Scales of Melody and their different Keys.

## ARTICLE X.

T HE scales which belong to the melody of every part, are made use of in order to suit the different acuteness, and gravity of the different voices or instruments.

These fcales are in number eight, every one having its proper different key, which fhews the order and place of the founds in every fcale; and these keys are described in Fig. VI. Example X. Plate V. and explained in the Introduction of this Treatife, where also has been mentioned, that now they are reduced to the number of five, but are all used in great church music in eight and fixteen parts, as distinctly explained in the fame Introduction: Therefore we have now described in the Example XVII. Plate XVI. all the eight fcales, with their limited founds descending and ascending.

Every fcale has its proper key, to which fucceflively follows that fcale afcending and defcending, which is proper to every one of the different voices. The notes of thefe fcales have their proper limits, which muft not be paffed in afcending or defcending in compofitions, where all the different voices are joined, as in full choruffes, and in three or four voices, or more: But in compofitions for fome particular voices, the limits of thefe fcales may be exceeded according to the compafs of the voices. The inftruments, as violin, oboe, and violoncello, are not obliged to the above limits, which may be paffed according to their particular practice and ufe.

## Of the divers Politions of the Unifon respectively to the different Keys.

#### ARTICLE XI.

A L L the notes in Example XVIII. Plate XVI. which are under the different keys of F, C, G, in their different places, are all unifons, being all the fame note C, from their place or different polition to the correspondent unifon C, in all the other fcales, is known

known the diftance of every found in their refpective fcales, and that ferves to keep every part in its proper compass, and also the easier and more immediately to know the distance fromone key and fcale to another, and confequently for applying the proper notes which belong to every particular voice, every one of which cannot exceed their nearer parts in the acute or grave, but they must be always below the nearer acute, and higher than the grave part.

Now fince we have known what is mulic in general, its founds, its different fyftems, and their division and fcales; we shall pass on to digest and explain the fundamental harmony, its laws and rules, contained in the next books.

END of the FIRST BOOK.



## DELL'

## ARTE ARMONICA:

**O** R,

## A TREATISE of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

## BOOK II.

Containing the Fundamental Harmony, explained by the Fundamental Counterpoint; by which are formed all the Canons, orderly joined in one Harmonic Code, containing and explaining all the Laws and Rules of all possible Combinations of Sounds, and their Progressions; and first the following Description of the faid Fundamental Counterpoint, and of its Compositions, which make the Code Harmonic.

## Of the Fundamental Counterpoint.



Chapter I. Book I.

N the fifth article of the first chapter of the antecedent book, the harmony was divided into fundamental and figurate : The fundamental becomes now the fubject of this book. It is called fundamental, because properly it is the basis or foundation of harmony, and is the only practical theory of the art; which is explained by a courfe or feries of harmonical compositions, composed by a fundamental counterpoint, as we call it, as has been mentioned in the above-faid article,

This fundamental counterpoint was never hitherto known, and confequently never ufed, being very different from the counterpoint commonly used in church music, and in teaching the composition of music. In the counterpoint formerly, and now in the vogue, the bass and the parts move either gradually or skipping at pleasure: For this reason the composition of mulic cannot be learned otherwife than imperfectly, and by a long practice, without knowing the derivation of the particular rules belonging to the divers combinations of founds and and their progreffions. But in the counterpoint here introduced, the motions of the bafs, and alfo of the parts, are limited; the bafs moving only by its competent fkips, and the other parts moving gradually, without fkipping; in this manner the different motions of the bafs are all diffinguifhed, alfo the different combination of the founds formed by the parts to every different and particular motion of the bafs, which in fimple progreffion paffes through all the eight original founds of the natural fcale, and in mixed or varied progreffions thro' all the femitones of the fcales of transposition. By this means it is very eafy to know diffinctly all the general and particular rules of the combinations and progreffions of founds; which rules it would be almost impossible to demonstrate, without the above diffinct and fucceffive order. This order appears very clear by the fucceffion of the compositions of the fame fundamental counterpoint, which compositions are called canons, because every one contains and shews a law or rule to be observed in the composition of music; and all the fame canons joined together are called the harmonic code, because it contains all laws and rules of harmony.

This harmonic code is divided into two parts; the first part contains the divers combinations of the founds, fimple, compound, and full, belonging to the divers motions of the bass in fimple and natural progrefion: The fecond part contains the fame different combinations belonging also to the different motions of the bass, but in mixed and varied progreffion. The whole code is divided into chapters, and every chapter into articles. Every chapter contains one of the fundamental motions of the bass; as by fifths or thirds afcending and defcending, and in its articles all different combinations which belong to the fame motion of the chapter, as fimple, compound and full; in fimple progreffion in the first part, and in mixed in the fecond part of the fame code.

## The FIRST PART of the HARMONIC CODE.

## CHAP. I.

## Of the confonant perfect fundamental Movement of the Bass, comonly called the Skip of Cadence.

HE movement of the fundamental confonant perfect fkip of cadence is the T of principal of all other movements or fundamental fkips, being the more natural, and confequently the more pleafant. It is called perfect, not only becaufe it goes directly to the cadence, by which are perfected all harmonical compositions, but also for being capable of all the gradual compound combinations, as has been mentioned, and as will clearly appear in the following canons in their respective articles.

## ARTICLE I. Of the Confonant Combination.

#### CANON I. PLATE 17.

THIS combination is called confonant, becaufe it is only composed of two confonants, fifth and octave; and becaufe it is not joined with some harmonic founds, as the third or tenth, cannot be called harmonic.

In this canon the fundamental bass moves with the perfect consonant strip of cadence passing through all the notes in the natural scale, accompanied only with the fifth and octave, which changes alternately. The first part begins with the fifth, which descending a tone, passes to the octave of the succeeding note of the bass; the second part, which begins

46

Book II.

begins with the octave, keeps firm, and is changed into a fifth at the next note by the motion of the bass: The same progression and combination are continued by the bass and the parts till the end of the canon; the two parts, when one defcends, the other keeps firm, proceeding in this manner by fourths and fifths, in defcending the scale together with the bass.

First N. B. This canon being only conformant, and confequently not harmonic, cannot fubfift in two or three parts; but it is of use in five or more parts, for doubling the two conformants, the fifth and octave.

Second N. B. The bass in the fecond measure in all canons of simple progression, and also with the compound by feven, used in this chapter, being in the note F, passes to the note B, which is a false fifth descending, or a false fourth ascending, confequently the note B being deprived of its perfect fifth, may be confidered as a false fifth, as it is; but this false fifth B tors, being prepared in the antecedent combination of the note F by F its octave, passes as a just fifth, and the ear is not offended. Moreover, these two notes B and F, which are the two indicative notes of the natural scale, must necessarily be distant fix femitones, by which notes must also the bass fundamental pass with its progression, notwithstanding that the same interval is not a perfect fifth; otherways proceeding by a perfect fifth, it transposes immediately the fcale. There is another reason which arises from the two principal stable and immoveable fundamental bass, but it is omitted, as the explanation would be too long, and the above two reasons being fufficient for practice.

## ARTICLE II. Of the simple Harmonic Combination.

## CANON II. PLATE 17.

THIS canon fhews the rule of using the simple combination, commonly called the common accord, which is composed by the third, fifth, and octave.

The part which begins with a fifth does not defcend to the octave, as in the first canon, but afcends a tone higher to give the third to the fucceeding bass note, which cannot be done by the other parts in a gradual motion. The fame third afcending with the following note, gives the octave to the bass note, which octave having no other harmonic found, or confonant, near to pass into, must rest in its place, as has been done by the fame octave in the first canon, becoming the fifth to the following bass note; which fifth passes to the third, and from the third to the octave, continuing the fame progression in all the canon. The other parts proceed in like manner. The first and fecond part moving by a third and fourth between each other; and the fecond and third parts move by a fifth and fixth between each other, all the parts proceeding in contrary motion to the bass; the bass defcending, and the parts afcending, as it appears in the canon.

## Of doubling the two confonant Fifth and Octave, making fix real Parts.

#### CANON III. PLATE 17.

THIS canon is formed by the union of the two antecedent, from which union the parts of the fifth and octave being confonant, confequently of a leffer fenfation in respect to the third, which is harmonic, therefore are doubled. In this canon is only to be observed, that the two parts which are doubled descends with the bass; on the contrary the three other parts as in the fecond canon.

By the contrary motion of the parts, the two confonant parts are doubled, without proceeding in unifons in fifth and octave, with the other two parts: The third needs not to be doubled in fimple combination, being perfectly harmonic; if doubled, it would make the parts lefs fenfible.

ARTICLE

Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

48

Book H

## ARTICLE III. Of the Genforment Combination.

### CANON IV. PLATE 18.

NOW it must be observed in what manner the simple combination may be changed into the compound combination, which is done by adding of two of the superior thirds to the simple combination, as the seventh and ninth, &c. The seventh found of the natural scale, or whatsoever scale transposed, or not transposed, is the first third above the other two thirds which compose the fifth: This seventh is called by practitioners diffonant; and discord, or false, by the *Italians*, as well as other superior thirds, the ninth, eleventh, and thirteenth; but notwithstanding these terms (particularly that of dissonant) are improperly used; however, to prevent mistakes, we shall hereafter use the term of discord or false, and also the terms of preparation and resolution of the above discords.

The feventh being confidered as difcord, confequently muft be prepared, which term fignifies that it muft be before a concord in the preceding combination, (the concord founds are the thirds, perfect fifths, and octaves) and after becoming difcord in the fucceeding meafure, or note, it muft become again a concord in the fubfequent note; and this is called refolution of difcords, or falfes. These difcords, with their preparations and refolutions, not only regard the parts with the bass, but also betwixt one another of the fame parts. In this present canon, the feventh is prepared by the third, in the first part, and again refolved into a third, by defcending one note: The second part, which begins with a fifth to the bass note, as note to the third, in order to prepare the secont, in the next note, which seventh is afterwards resolved into a third, both the parts continuing the same progression alternatively. The two parts proceeding betwixt each other by fourths, resolved into fifths, as in the canon.

Of the Manner of adding the Fifth, and Octave, to the above Canon.

## CANON V. PLATE 18.

IN the above canon is wanted the fifth, and octave, to make up the complement of the compound combination to the antecedent fourth canon, which has only the third and feventh; but by adding the first canon, they will compose the prefent canon with the third, fifth, feventh, and octave; where the two first parts proceed betwixt each other by feconds prepared by the thirds, and resolved into thirds; the same proceeding as between the third and fourth part; this fourth part, with the first part, moves by fixths, and the fecond with the third part by thirds, but the first part with the third, also the fourth part with the fecond proceeds from the fifths to the fourths, descending the parts with the bass, two by two, as it is in the canon.

## Of the Combination of the Ninth.

#### CANON VI. PLATE 18.

THE ninth, being a third above the feventh, which feventh being prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, confequently the ninth muft be prepared by the fifth, and refolved into a fifth in defcending like the feventh. The two parts which compose this canon, gives alternately the fifth and ninth to the bass, proceeding between each other by a fifth and fourth, like the feventh.

The

Part I.

## The Rule of introducing the Ninth, instead of the Octave, with the Third, Fifth, and Seventh.

#### CANON VII. PLATE 18.

**B**<sup>Y</sup> joining the fourth and fixth canon together, is formed the combination of third, fifth, feventh, and ninth, inflead of the octave, as in this canon.

The ninth arifes from keeping firm the fifth, inftead of defcending to the octave; the two parts which moves from the ninth to the fifth, proceed betwixt each other by fourths, refolved into fifths; the two higher parts defcend together by thirds, and alfo the two lower parts; only when the two first parts move, the two lower keep firm, making a combination of third, fifth, and feventh, between them all, and by the two fuperior parts defcending, the feventh is refolved into a fixth, and the fifth paffes into a fourth, which refolves again into a fifth; likewife the two other parts afterwards defcending, the fixth becomes a feventh, and the fourth a fifth, proceeding continually in the fame manner; alfo betwixt the third part, and the two fuperior, which makes an accord of third and fifth, the two higher parts defcending, become a fecond and fourth; the third part afterwards defcending the fourth, is refolved into a fifth, and the fecond into a third.

N. B. In the fecond bar, or measure of the first part, the note G, which forms the ninth to the bass note, and it is afterwards refolved into the fifth F, in the following measure, marked thus \*, may at first fight feem a discord, because, being a false fifth, it may feem not prepared by the antecedent note, as it is prepared in the fecond and third canon, where it is prepared by the octave; but here the ninth is confidered as an appogiature, which is a combination of the fame antecedent note, inflead of the octave, which as octave of the principal relative note of the bass, should always be understood; and as the fame note F is expressed in the antecedent measure by the bass note, this ferves for the preparation of the false fifth, and notwithstanding that the false fifth is not prepared by its antecedent note, but the preparation arising from the other founds, or notes, which may fublist in the fame combination, the ear is not offended.

## Of joining the Octave to the above Canon, making eight real Parts.

#### CANON VIII. PLATE 19.

THE disposition of this canon into eight parts, confists in uniting the feventh canon with the fecond, in the following manner. It must take the four parts of the fourth the fecond, in the following manner. It must take the four parts of the feventh canon, which gives the feventh and ninth to the bass prepared, and resolved, as in the canon, and the three parts of the fecond canon; by this means the fifths and thirds are doubled, because it being betwixt the seventh and the ninth to the bass, the octave becomes more fenfible, as diffonant with the fame feventh and ninth: Befides, as all the fuperior thirds, excepting the fundamental feventh, very often ferves as appogiatures to the following note, and particularly the ninth to the octave, confequently the fame ninth ferves inftead of the doubled octave, and it is at the composer's pleasure to use the octave, or the ninth. If the compofer would suppress the ninth, and use only the octave, in that case the second canon must be joined with the fifth canon, by this means the octaves are doubled like the thirds and fifths. But if the compofer would double the octave, at the fame time when the ninth fublists, he must add two parts more, which are the two confonant parts in the first canon; this will make a composition of ten real parts, in which the part which descends from the ninth to the fifth, proceeds continually by fourths, and confequently, when the fame part which defcends from the fifth to the octave, is inferior to the other, which defcends from the ninth to the fifth, it proceeds always by fifths; which progression is  $\mathbf{O}$ permitted

50

permitted in compound and full combination, becaufe the harmony is not only complete, but also the octave is doubled, as is the fifth; but in fimple combination, it cannot fubfist.

## Of paffing from one Discord to another.

## CANON IX. PLATE 19.

THIS canon is compounded of three parts, which conftantly keeps firm in the first fimple combination belonging to the natural feele in which the belonger to the natural feele in the natural feele in the belonger to the natural feele in the natural feele in the belonger to the natural feele in the belonger to the natural feele in the natural feele in the belonger to the natural feele in the natural feele fimple combination belonging to the natural scale, in which the bass continues its progreffion. The first part begins with the third to the bass, which third, according to the rules of fimple combination, would afcend to the octave, but here it keeps firm for the preparation of the feventh, as in the rules of the compound combinations; this feventh, which, according to the fame rules of compound combinations, ought to be refolved in defcending to the third, but keeping firm in the fame note, is changed into the eleventh, commonly called the fourth, by the motion of the bafs: This fourth would have been refolved by the rules of the compound combinations, by defcending to the third, but keeping firm, it is refolved into the octave, by the progression of the bas, which refolution, belongs properly to the full combination; after that the octave paffes to the fifth, as in the manner of the fimple combination, which fifth continuing firm in its note, prepares the ninth, and this ninth continuing firm, is changed in the thirteenth, commonly called the fixth, by the progression of the bass, as in full combination; at last this fixth, or thirteenth, is refolved by the fame bafs into the tenth, or, as commonly called, the third. The other parts proceed in like manner, remaining always firm, all being refolved by the progression of the bas.

N.B. This canon cannot be of use in the progression, as it is, being formed only to shew the passage of the seventh and ninth into another discord, when the same feventh and ninth may happen in every one of the three parts which compose the original simple harmony, fometimes may be continued one or both parts, which begins with the octave, or with the fifth in a long progression of the bass, without changing the scale, because being both the octaves of the principal, and its guide, as immoveables, and stable fundamental, which, as has been demonstrated in the antecedent book, may both continue under all combinations in simple progression: In regard to the harmonic third major of the simple combination, it cannot be used freely, being too much fensible, and confequently it will confound the simple combination, which belongs to the fucceeding note of the progression of the bass; but in some or both parts to the simple combinations are tripled, and the compound doubled, may be used on some occasions, as in the canon.

## ARTICLE IV. Of full Combination.

#### CANON X. PLATE 20.

T HE full combination by which this canon is composed, is derived from the union of almost all the antecedent canons. The first three parts are the fame as in the antecedent ninth canon, composing the fimple combination to the lowest principal, unmoveable, fundamental basses, and all together with the following parts, the full combination to the other basses. The two following parts, marked 4 and 5, are the two parts in the first canon, which doubles the two consonant fifth, and octave. The next eight parts, the fixth, seventh, eight, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, and with the first following bass, are the fame which compose the eighth canon of the compound combination. The two basses numbred 13 and 14, proceed betwixt one another from the unifon to the octave, which in full combination are accounted two different parts, because, strictly seaking, the unifons are not the fame some part, because they have the fame combination, and confequently

quently the fame figures : Thefe two baffes are the fundamentals of the progreffion of every harmonic combination, fo called to diftinguish them from the last two stable and unmoveable fundamental baffes, which continue firm to the end of the canon; the loweft is the principal, and the other the guide, as mentioned in the first book. In this canon all the founds of the octave are continually combined in full or general harmony, in fimple and natural progreffion of the perfect confonant skip of cadence, which skip is the principal of all the progressions, and to which every other movement are subservient and subordinate. It comprehends all the more natural and common proper preparations and refolutions, as has been explained by the antecedent canons: But because the full Combination is continued fucceffively all thro' the canon, it cannot be of any use in compositions of figurate harmony, or common mufic, in which the fimple, or compound combination, muft be mixed with the full combination, as will be explained in the last book. Therefore this canon is put here only to know the derivation of the full harmony, and as an epilogue, or a fummary of all the antecedent canons, confequently it may ferve for a memorandum of all the natural and common rules concerning the different combinations to this fundamental skip of cadence.

## ARTICLE V. Of the Seventh and Ninth paffing to another Discord, as commonly used.

## CANON XI. PLATE 21.

I N the ninth canon it was fhewn in what manner a found may be continued paffing from one difcord to another through all the octave, being at laft refolved by the bafs; but in this canon is fhewn the paffage of one difcord to another, and afterwards their proper refolution in the fecond time, or in the fame note of the bafs in the following meafure, the notes of the bafs being all doubled for this purpofe. The two first parts make the feventh and ninth in the fecond meafure; and the third and fourth parts the fame feventh and ninth in the third meafure; each paffing to the following meafure keeps firm the fame notes which are changed by the progression of the bafs from the feventh and ninth into the fourth and fixth, which are immediately refolved in the middle of the fame measure, the fourth defcending into the third, and the fixth into the fifth. The first part which gives the ninth to the bafs proceeds with the fecond part by thirds, and with the third part by thirds refolved into fifths, and the fame first part proceeds with the fourth part by fixths and fevenths, which fevenths are refolved fucceflively into fixths; the fecond part with the third, proceeds by a fecond refolved into a third, and with the fourth part proceeds from third to third, as appears in the canon : Thefe fort of falses may be called falses of postposition, because the refolution is prolonged or postponed.

## How to refolve the Seventh and Ninth in afcending.

### CANON XII. PLATE 21.

T HE refolution of the feventh and ninth in afcending muft be done as in the above canon, to the fame note of the bafs, the notes being doubled to the purpofe, the difcord, or falfe, falling in the first note of the meafure, and their refolution in the fecond note of the fame meafure, in that manner the falfes notes and their refolutions are diffinctly and clearly perceived. In this canon all the parts proceed with the fame fucceffion of notes: The fifth prepares the ninth to the first note of the following meafure, and the ninth is refolved by afcending to the third in the fecond note of the fame meafure; the fame third ferves for a preparation to the feventh in the next meafure, and in its first note; and the fame feventh is refolved afcending to the octave in the fecond note of the fame meafure : The octave paffes to the fifth in the following meafure, which fifth prepares again the ninth in the next meafure, which is refolved by afcending to the third in the fame field in the fame meafure continuing in this manner, as it is apparent from the canon. It muft be obferved in this kind

## Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

52 '

kind of refolution of thefe falfes afcending, that the difcords derived from thefe preparations, being the fame notes continued, inftead of afcending or defcending for the fimple combination to the motion of the bafs, by which they are changed in difcord, they ought to be confidered as appogiatures in afcending; but the beft appogiatures are those performed in defcending than afcending, as being more natural, and confequently more pleafant. Notwithstanding that the feventh when it properly is a fundamental indicative note defcending, belonging to the fundamental guide, and when the fundamental guide keeps firm, it may afcend to the octave of the fame guide, being its principal note, from whence it derives, fo the refolution afcending may be equally good and pleafant: But the ninth refolving afcending to the third it returns far from its principal note, viz. the octave, with a contrary motion; for this reafon it muft be ufed only upon fome particular occafions, as in grand mufic, where all the parts are doubled and tripled.

## ARTICLE VI. Of some uncommon Combinations; and first, of Falses by Anticipation ascending.

#### CANONS XIII, XIV, XV. PLATES 21, 22.

A Nticipation is the contrary of the poltpolition, the notes which makes the first combination to the bass move alcending to the following combination, before the bass moves itfelf; and this anticipation being the combination of the next note of the bass, confequently is a difcord to the existent bass note, which difcord is resolved by the note of the following motion of the bass, as in the canons. In the thirteenth canon the note which makes the third passes to the fourth alcending, confequently the bass has over it the combination of the fourth and fifth, and the fourth ferves by way of anticipation of the octave of the following note of the bass; and the part which makes the fifth, alcends to the third, which prepares the fourth, which again is resolved by the motion of the bass into the octave.

The fourteenth canon flews the manner of forming the anticipation with the fourth joined with the fixth to the third and octave, which is done, as the above anticipation of the octave by the fourth; the fixth making the anticipation of the third, as in the canon.

The fifteenth canon is compounded of the thirteenth canon joined with the first canon, by which the two confonants are doubled, and the fame first canon may be added to the fourteenth in order alfo to double the confonants.

Of the Anticipations in descending.

CANONS XVI, XVII. PLATES 22, 23.

T HE fixteenth canon is almost the fame as the fifth canon, the only difference is, that the fifth in canon V. defcends directly to the octave in the next measure; and in this fixteenth canon it defcends into the fourth in the fame measure, becoming the anticipation of the octave in the next measure, confequently the combination in the first part of the measure is the fifth and feventh, and in the fecond Part of the fame measure it is the fourth and feventh. The feventeenth canon is the fixteenth, with this difference, that the feventh defcends to the fixth in the fame measure, which fixth becomes the anticipation to the third, as it appears in the above canon; the bass having the combination of the fifth and feventh to the first note of the measure, and the fourth and fixth to the fecond note of the fame measure, which fourth and fixth are the anticipations of the third and octave.

N. B. It must be observed, that the anticipations in descending arises from the compound harmony, where all the parts descend with the bass; on the contrary, on the simple combination, as the parts ascend, and the bass descends, the anticipations must ascend with the parts.

Second

Part I.

Second N. B. These anticipations are only used in grand music of churches, where all the principal parts are doubled, tripled and quadrapled; and particularly, and almost only, in the full combination of long cadences; and more particularly in the final and last cadence, which generally holds long for two, three, or more measures; and every measure having at least two accented times; we must take care that the anticipation fall not upon the accent time, but upon the part of the measure which is nearest to the conclusion, and must use them also very feldom, and with judgment, all these fort of discords being of unnatural preparation and resolution.

## ARTICLE VII. Of the Discords called by the Italian Masters Falses by Change.

## CANON XVIII. PLATE 23.

THIS canon is composed of ten real Parts to two choruses, from which appears the rule and manner of changing the superior thirds or discords, called falses by change, and their resolutions from one to another part.

The fecond part of the first chorus makes in the second measure the third, which is A to the fundamental bafs, and in the fame fecond measure, marked thus (A \*); descend from the third A in G, making the ninth to the fame bafs, which ninth is refolved into the fifth to the bass in the following measure. The second part of the second chorus in the fame fecond measure, whose first note is G, ninth to the fundamental bass of the second chorus, and in the fecond time of the fame measure, also marked thus (A \*), ascends to the note A, refolving the ninth into the third to the fame note of the bass of the second chorus: By this means the two fecond parts of the first and fecond chorus change each other their founds, and notwithstanding this change, both continuing the fame combination to the bass. The third part of the first chorus in the second measure, is in the Note F, which is the octave of the bass in the same first chorus, and this octave prepares the seventh in the fecond note of the fame measure, marked (\*); and the third part in the fecond chorus in the fame fecond measure, which also is marked (B \*), has the note E, which is the feventh to its bafs, which feventh is immediately refolved in the fame measure by ascending to F the octave of the bass, with the second note of the same measure : These two parts of the lecond chorus change also their notes, without changing the compound combination of their bas; only that the bass of the first chorus has the simple combination in the first note of the measure, and the compound in the second note of the same measure: On the contrary, the fecond bass of the second chorus hath its compound combination in the first note of the measure, and the simple in the second note of the same measure, which difference changes not the order of the harmony, the total combination being still continued notwithstanding the above change.

P

СНАР.

53

## CHAP. II.

## Of the Progression by the imperfect Consonant Skip of the Guide, with all its Combinations; and first with the Consonant Combination.

#### ARTICLE I.

I G defcribed in this chapter, the bass from the principal note of the natural fcate C, sizes afcends to the fifth note G, which is its fundamental guide, but immediately the fame note G changes the quality of guide, becoming the principal note of its own relative scale, because it ascends successively to the note D, which is its fifth note, and confequently its relative guide ; and by afcending the fcale with the progression of the fame imperfect confonant skip of guide, the harmony passes successively through all the divers guides of the scales relative to the first principal scale, preventing by this manner the final cadence, and by this means deceiving the expectation of the ear. The bafs, by this progreffion, afcends the scale, together with its two confonant notes, the fifth and octave, alfo with the compound harmony; but the fimple combination defcends in contrary motion of the bafs, and of the confonant, and compound combination; which proceeding is the opposite of the proceeding by the perfect skip of cadence, by which the bass, joined with the confonant, on compound combination, defcends the fcale, and the fimple afcends the scale on the contrary motion of the bass. In this progression of the guide, the harmony can only proceed to the note E, because the following note of this progression is the note B, which is deprived of its confonant fifth in the natural fcale, having the falfe fifth, which cannot be prepared in the antecedent combination of this progreffion. This is the first reason which shews the imperfection of the same imperfect consonant motion, or fkip of guide; and another reafon is, that it cannot be compounded immediately with the two first superior thirds, the seventh and ninth, because they cannot be prepared in the antecedent combination, which feventh and ninth, being the nearest discord to the principal note of the scale, confequently are the properest sounds of the compound combination.

#### CANON XIX. PLATE 24.

T HIS canon has the octave, which ascends to the fifth in the next note, and the fifth keeping firm in the next measure, is changed into the octave, proceeding in this manner all along the canon, ascending with the bass, without passing the note E, for the reason above-mentioned.

## ARTICLE II. Of the simple Harmonic Combination.

## CANON XX. PLATE 24.

T HE progression in this canon differs from that of the antecedent canon, (as mentioned above) in which the two confonant parts alcend with the bass, but in this canon the parts all descend contrary to the bass. The combination differs from that of the second canon of the antecedent chapter; in which second canon, by the motion of the perfect confonant skip of cadence, the fifth ascends to the third; this passes ascending to the octave, and this keeping firm, is changed into the fifth; but in this progression of the imperfect confonant skip of guide, the octave must descend to the third, and the third

Book II.

descends

descends to the fifth; this fifth resting firm, is changed into the octave, by the motion of the bass.

#### CANON XXI. PLATE 24.

THIS canon flews the manner of doubling the two confonant notes, the fifth and octave, which is done in the fame manner as the third canon, that is, by joining the confonant combination of canon xix. with the following canon xx. becoming a composition of fix parts.

## ARTICLE III. Of the Compound Combination.

#### CANONS XXII, XXIII. PLATES 24, 25.

I N this progreffion there cannot be introduced the feventh and ninth, thefe not being comprehended in the antecedent combination, as mentioned before; but inftead of the feventh and ninth, may be added the two fuperior thirds, the eleventh and thirteenth, commonly called the fourth and fixth, which being far diftant from the fimple combinotion, are confidered as difcords; therefore thefe two founds, being part of the preceding combination, may fubfift in the following combination, as in the two canons xxii. and xxiii.

The canon xxii. fnews the manner of introducing the eleventh or fourth with the fifth, the eleventh being prepared in the octave, and refolved into the third in the fame meafure. The canon xxiii. fnews the preparation and refolution of the thirteenth or fixteenth, joined with the eleventh, as it is expressed in the canon. In this fort of fundamental combination, the notes of the bass, and of the parts, must all be doubled, because the resolution of those discords must be done to the fame note of the bass, which is the fame note as the first, and becomes a principal relative, which as feending to the fifth in the next measure, the bass passes into its following relative guide, the fame order continuing in all the progression of this canon. These falses in both these canons are properly falses of postpositions.

## ARTICLE IV. Of the Anticipations.

## CANONS XXIV, XXV. PLATE 25.

T HE anticipation in this progreflion arifes from the feventh to the third, as in canon xxiv. and from the ninth the anticipation of the fifth, as in canon xxv. The feventh is prepared by defcending from the octave in the fame meafure, and afterwards it is refolved by the motion of the bafs into the third. The ninth is alfo prepared in defcending from the third in the fame meafure; and in the next meafure it is refolved into the fifth, by the motion of the bafs. The first of thefe two canons has only the combination of the feventh, and the fecond canon is combined with both the feventh and the ninth ; the feventh is the anticipation of the third, and the ninth to the fifth, as it is clearly defcribed in the above canons.

*N.B.* Befides what has been faid in the fecond note, after canon xvii. at the end of the article VI. chap. I. of this book, it must be observed, that these anticipations are refolved contrary to the rule of resolutions, which is, that the discord or falses must be refolved by the same parts, which makes the same falses in fyncoping, or moving. This general rule has fome exceptions, but these exceptions feem not applicable to the anticipations in this progression of the present imperfect consonant skip of guide; therefore the best way is never to make use of them.

C, H A P.

## CHAP. III.

## Of the perfect Auxiliar Skip of a Third low.

#### ARTICLE I.

To afcend the fcale; but by the help of this harmonic auxiliar fkip of a third low, it may afcend continually by tones and femitones.

#### CANON XXVI. PLATE 26.

THIS canon only shews, that this perfect auxiliar harmonic skip is not properly fundamental in continual progression, but derived from the perfect consonant skip of cadence, to which it is particularly subordinate, notwithstanding it bears all fundamental combination, as its true fundamental bass, which appears by the following canons.

ARTICLE II. Of the Simple Combination to the Supposed fundamental Bass, which Combination is compounded in the true fundamental Bass.

CANONS XXVII, XXVIII, XXIX, XXX. PLATES 26, 27.

**T** HE following four canons have every one two baffes; the first, which is the supposed fundamental bass, descends continually by thirds, but the lowest is the true one.

The canon xxvii. is with fimple combination to the fuppofed fundamental bafs, but the fame combination becomes compound to the true fundamental bafs, becaufe the note which makes the fifth to the first bafs, is the feventh to the fecond, the very fundamental bafs; and this feventh is refolved into the octave, by afcending to the fame note of the fecond bafs, its octave; which octave keeping firm, it changes into the third of the fuppofed fundamental bafs, but is the fifth to the true fundamental bafs. This manner of refolving the feventh, in afcending to the octave of the bafs, is always good, as mentioned in the explanation of canon xii. plate 21.

The canon xxviii. fhews the rule for adding the feventh to the fuppofed fundamental bafs, which feventh is the ninth to the true fundamental with its refolution in defcending; the refolution of the feventh into the octave, is a refolution by fuppofition, becaufe the feventh is in the place of the ninth to the true fundamental bafs, and this refolution into the octave in defcending together with the fuppofed bafs, paffes for good, for being the proper refolution of the ninth, notwithftanding that the first bafs defcending a third in the fame time that the part defcends a fecond, the fame bafs muft neceffarily proceed by two octaves, not explicit, but implicit: Moreover the fame refolution is not only fupported, as being by fuppofition, but alfo becaufe the combination of the founds is complete, in which the two Octaves, or two fifths following each other, are confidered as double parts.

In canon xxix, the first bass has the feventh and octave combined in the first notes of the fecond and the following measure, and the feventh and ninth to the fecond note of the fame measure; but the two notes in every measure of the fundamental bass being the fame notes, they have continually the combination of the feventh and ninth. The derivation of these falses, and their resolutions, appear very clearly by their canons. The supposed fundamental bass descending a third, and the part which gives the feventh keeping firm the fame note all the measure, the fame feventh is changed into the ninth in the second part of the fame measure by the motion of the supposed fundamental bass; as likewife the fifth fifth into the feventh, and the third into the fifth; therefore both the notes of the meafure, being part of the proper combination to the fame bafs, confequently the first notes of every meafure are falses of supposition, which by the motion of the fame bafs in the fame measure are changed into the proper fundamental falses in the fecond notes, which after are refolved by supposition of the supposed fundamental bafs with the first note of the following measure, as it is clearly apparent in the canon.

The canon xxx. has the refolutions of all the compound combination in afcending, before the fundamental bafs moves; confequently in the fuppofed fundamental bafs all the falfes and their refolutions are by fuppofition.

*N. B.* The refolution of the ninth afcending a full tone to the true fundamental bafs, becomes a little harfh, as its proper refolution is in defcending to the octaye, which is its principal note; therefore the refolution of the ninth afcending, when the two fundamental baffes fubfift, muft only be used in full harmony, where all the notes are doubled and tripled.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of the perfect Auxiliar Skip of Third low joined with the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence.

#### ARTICLE I.

T G the two confonant perfect and imperfect fkips, but properly with the perfect confonant fkip of Cadence, which is the fubject of this article.

#### CANON XXXI. PLATE 27.

THE bass in this canon descending by its first motion a third in the second part of the measure, becomes the relative guide to the following note in the next measure, to which following note in the next measure it moves with the fundamental skip of cadence. The octave, and the third in the second and third parts, keeping firm all the measure, are changed, the octave into the third, and the third into the fifth, by the second note of the bass in the same measure, and in the next measure the fifth ascends to the third, and the third in the lower part ascends to the octave. The first part, which begins with the fifth to the bass, passes to the octave in the same measure; and the octave in the next measure is changed into the fifth by the motion of the bass.

N. B. It must be observed in these canons, that as the progression of the basis is made with different skips, confequently the combinations must be different. In the auxiliar skip the octaves and the third keep firm, and in the consonant skip of cadence the third passes into the octave, the octave is changed into the sifth, and the sifth as a the third, as has been shewn in the canons of the progression of the same perfect skip of cadence in the first chapter.

Q

ARTICLE

## ARTICLE II. Of the Compound Combination to the fame Progression.

#### CANONS XXXII, XXXIII, XXXIV. PLATES 27, 28.

THE principal thing to be observed in these three canons is the manner of preparing and refolving the fuperior thirds or difcords, which manner differs in the auxiliar fkip from that of the confonant skip of cadence, as above-mentioned. In the skip of cadence the feventh is always prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, as may be feen in the canons of the third article, chap. I. But when the bass skips a third low, or a fixth high, as in the canons of this fecond article, the fifth keeping firm, prepares and becomes the feventh, which is refolved into the third, because the bass then moves with the skip of cadence; but when the fame feventh is prepared by the third in the fkip of cadence, as in canon xxxiii. the fame feventh becomes the ninth by the bass note falling a third, which ninth is refolved into a fifth by the fkip of cadence, according to the rules for the refolutions in the fame fkip. Likewife the ninth when prepared by the fifth in the fkip of cadence, inftead of being refolved into the fifth, it is refolved into the third by the auxiliar skip: Allo the feventh, when it is not joined with the ninth, is refolved into the octave by the fame auxiliar fkip, as in canon xxxii. In the fame canon xxxii. is the rule for joining the feventh with the octave; and in canon xxxiii. is fhewn the rule for joining the feventh with the ninth only in the skip of cadence; and in the following canon xxxiv. is the rule for joining the feventh and ninth to both the fkips of the progression in the compound combination of eight real parts, which is made by joining the canon xxxi. with any one of the two following canons.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the fame Harmonic Skip joined with the imperfect Confonant Skip of Guide.

#### CANONS XXXV, XXXVI. PLATE 28.

HE canon xxxv. fhews, that this fkip, joined with the fkip of guide, cannot be continued, but only for a few measures, because the note B has not its perfect fifth in fimple and natural progression; and the canon xxxvi. fhews, that the perfect auxiliar fkip is improper with the fkip of guide, because there is another better fundamental bass, which is the properest fundamental; therefore it is evident, that this harmonic fkip a third low, or a fixth high, can only properly be joined with the perfect consonant fkip of cadence, from whence it derives, and to which it is its proper auxiliar fkip.

Book II.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the imperfect Auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third high, or a Sixth low, in continual Progression.

#### CANONS XXXVII, XXXVIII. PLATE 29.

HE lower bass is added to both these two canons, in order to shew, that the first bass, which ascends by thirds, is not fundamental, but derived from the imperfect confonant skip of guide, by which skip of guide the lower true fundamental bass moves, notwithstanding that the first bass, which proceeds by the perfect auxiliar fkip, may be treated as fundamental, namely, joined with the

fundamental combination of founds, but cannot be long continued in fimple and natural progression, for the imperfect fifth to the note B.

In canon xxxvii. the third part, which begins with the octave to the bafs notes, descends in the same measure, and gives the fifth to the second note of the first supposed fundamental bass, which skips a third high, which fifth is the seventh to the lower true fundamental bass; and this seventh, which is the fifth to the first bass, supposed fundamental (as above-mentioned) properly is an anticipation of the third, in the next measure to both the baffes. Also in canon xxxviii. the feventh to the supposed fundamental bass, which is the ninth to the lower true fundamental bass, is an anticipation to the fifth, in the next measure; and really every note in both these two canons, are all anticipations, and very difagreeable to the ear; and if they can be fuffered, must be only in quick movements, as paffing notes.

## Of the same Auxiliar Skip, joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence.

## CANONS XXXIX, XL, XLI. PLATES 29, 30.

THE canon xxxix. is with fimple combination, and the canon xl. with the compound combination, which combinations are fufficiently explained by looking on the faid canons.

The canon xli. flews, that the other two antecedent canons are improper, and confequently cannot give any pleasure, having the same improper foundation.

N. B. It must be observed, that in this progression of the first note of the bass, fkipping a third high to the fecond note in the fame measure, the combination paffes by the guide, with the skip of cadence, into the first notes of the following measures, confequently all the first notes of each measure may be confidered as principal, and the fecond notes of the fame measure, as relative guides; and as all these principal first notes are distant a third between themselves, in descending a third low, the progression becomes improper, becaufe it cannot be fundamental, as has been demonstrated by canon xxvi. with this difference, that the progression in the faid canon xxvi. descends directly and successively by thirds, and the proper foundation of the fame progression is the fimple natural skip of cadence; but in this prefent canon, as in the two antecedent canons, the progression being made by two different skips, consequently its true fundamental bass must be different from that of the faid 26th canon, as it is in this canon; from which it appears, that the three following notes defcending by thirds, notwithstanding they are joined with another skip, cannot be all fundamental, but one or two; the fundamental bass cannot constantly subsist in a like progression, as it appears in the two above canons xxxix, and xl.

## CHAP. VII.

## The fame Auxiliar Skip joined with the Skip of Guide.

#### CANON XLII. PLATE 30.

HIS canon is added here to demonstrate, that the progression of the imperfect auxiliar skip, joined with the imperfect consonant skip of guide, is improper for many reasons; the first is, that in the course of the progression, the harmony will fall upon the note B, the false fifth of which cannot be prepared; secondly, that all the first notes of every measure passing by the second skip of guide into the first note of the following measure, only distant a second below the first note of the antecedent measure, and because, that the same progression may more properly be made by the fimple process of the perfect consonant skip of cadence, in which process the false fifth to the note B, is prepared, as has been explained in the first and second canons of chapter I. consequently the skip of third high, joined with the skip of guide, becomes unnatural, and improper in its progression; therefore, from what has been faid, this skip of third high, joined with the skip of guide, is of little use in simple, natural progression; and it must be used with moderation upon fome occasions, but never in continued progression.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of the divers Combinations to the fimple and natural Progreffion, with all the four Skips of the fundamental Bafs.

#### CANONS XLIII, XLIV, XLV. PLATES 31, 32.

HESE three canons contained in this laft chapter of the first part of this T Harmonic Code, are composed by the four fundamental skips, the two confonant, and the two harmonic auxiliar; confequently the preparations, and the refolutions of the difcords become different, every one being relative to its particular skip of the bafs, as has been explained in their respective canons.

The canon xliii. is in fimple combination, and the xlivth in compound. The canon xlv. fnews the manner of introducing the full combination, according to the particular rules to every fundamental skip. To the fame last canon xlv. of full combination, is put under the first bass, a second bass; the first is the fundamental bass of progression, the second is the fundamental, stable, and immoveable bass, which has in its first note the principal note of the scale, joined with its fifth, which is its fundamental stable guide, into which it passes immediately with the following note in the next measure, and continues firm to the last meafure, in which it refolves, returning in the first note of the scale, which is the principal ftable foundation of the fame fcale, as has been explained in chapter IV. article I. first book. In the first measure of the same canon, the bass has the first principal fundamental note of the scale, which has its fifth joined above it; in the second measure it passes directly, joining its fifth, which is its fundamental stable guide, at the fame time that the fuperior fundamental bass of progreffion, moving with the skip of cadence, passes to the note F, which is the fubprincipal relative of the fcale natural : Thefe two different motions happening at the fame time, may at first fight be supposed a discord, because the note F was not in the antecedent combination, but was the note G, as fifth, and fundamental guide, which as fimple fifth was joined in the first measure to its principal, which, as before faid, becomes.

Part I.

becomes, in the fecond measure, the stable fundamental guide, which by the same note in the first measure, upon the same bass, prepares the note F, in which the first bass of progression has passed; also its third, which becomes the ninth to the under bass stable; and in regard of the other fuperior thirds to the fame note F, as the fifth and feventh, which are also prepared by the antecedent combination; these become the eleventh and thirteenth to the stable fundamental bass, which in this manner has the full combination of the feventh, ninth, eleventh and thirteenth, as is expressed in the canon. The following measure, in which the fundamental bass of progression passes to the note D, with the compound combination of 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, the combination of the stable fundamental bass is augmented with the fifth, which properly is the twelfth; and in the following fourth measure, where both basses are united, both have the same full combination, which is refolved into the fimple combination in the next measure, passing with the fame fimple combination into the final note of the cadence. From this canon it appears, that the fundamental feventh fometimes may be used without apparent preparation in final cadences, fuppoling the principal note doubled; but in this cafe the harmony must be complete, confequently it cannot be used in lefs than four parts. The other feventh, which is not fundamental, but relative, must be always prepared.

Here is the end of the explanation of the canons relative to all forts of combination of founds belonging to the fimple and natural progreffion; therefore we fhall pass to the fecond part, which contains in its canons all the laws and rules of the combination of founds belonging to the mixed and varied progreffion in its fucceffive order, and shewing the proper manner of transposing the two principal scales, natural and artificial, in every semitone of the scales of transposition.



R

THE

Book II.

## THE

## HARMONIC CODE.

## PART II.



N the first part of the Harmonic Code has been shewn all the laws and rules of all possible combinations of sounds belonging to every one of the fundamental motions of the bass in the simple and natural progression, through all the eight original sounds. And in this second part will be shewn the same

laws and rules of every combination of founds belonging to all the fame different fundamental motions of the bass, but in mixed and varied progression, namely, the bass passing through all the thirteen founds of the scale of transposition.

First N. B. In the mixed progretion all transposed fcales become principal of their own fcale, confequently every one has its feven relative fcales, in which the progretion may pass at pleasure with its proper harmony.

Second N. B. The founds of the transposed scales must be in the same order of the principal scale, from which they are derived; if derived from the natural scale, the third must be major, the fourth, fifth, and octave, all perfect; and the sixth, seventh, and ninth all major; the seventh to the guide, which in general must be flat, but on some occasions may be major, and the transposed scales from the artificial scale, the third must be minor, the fourth, fifth, and octave, all perfect; the seventh in descending the scale must be flat, but both scale, all perfect; the seventh to the seventh in descending the seventh be flat, but both seventh seventh to the seventh seventh to the seventh to the seventh to the seventh seventh to the seventh seventh seventh seventh seventh to the seventh sev

Third N.B. The best and most pleasant manner of compositions, is not only derived from the perfect knowledge of all combinations of founds, and their propereft and natural progression, but also from the good taste of the composer, in regard to the just and best application of the fame combinations and progressions to the different expressions, as gay, or pathetic, from which arifes many particular rules; between these rules the harmony requires an eafy and proper variety, by which the human fenfation is extremely delighted; confequently the progression of all these canons described in the Harmonic Code, being continued all along the whole octave, in the first part, and all along the femitones in the fecond part, becomes improper and tirefome, and many, particularly in the fecond part, impracticable, becaufe the bafs moving continually with perfect fifths defcending or afcending, fome parts in the combination are obliged to proceed continually by full tones, contrary to the order of the gradual progression of the natural scale, which proceeds by tones and femitones; and this order must be followed in all forts of progressions, and their combinations; therefore all these canons contained in this Harmonic Code, must be confidered, not in their continual progreffion, but only in their feparate particular progreffion, as only in three or four motions, having been composed all along the octave, and all along the femitones only, to fhew all the particular combinations and progreffions' in paffing from every tone and femitone to their nearer tone and femitone by the different motions or skips of the fundamental bass; and not for an example of a long progression, which must always be avoided.
## CHAP. I.

# Of the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence transpoling the Natural Scale into all the Semitones, with only the Confonant Combination.

#### ARTICLE I.

#### CANON XLVI. PLATE 33.

The confonant fifth, and octave, paffes through all the twelve intervals of the fcale of transposition, transposing the natural fcale into all the thirteen founds of the fame fcale by its perfect confonant skip of cadence: By this means there arises thirteen fcales, all principal; but the last being the fame as the first, is excluded, twelve remaining only, which are different in their founds, but not in the order of their intervals: The fifth note of every fcale is always the fundamental guide to the fame fcale, and its principal note becomes also the fundamental guide to the next transposed fcale, consequently the bass proceeding continually with its skip of cadence, every note must be considered as principal of their own fcale and guide fundamental to the next note.

First N. B. In simple progression the bass cannot go out of the eight original founds of the natural scale; and this is the reason that one of its fifths must be false, which is that from B to F ascending, or from F to B descending, as has been explained by the second note, at the end of article I. chap. I. of the first part; but in mixed progression, where the bass can have its perfect fifth, by using the semitones of the scale of transpofition, it passes successively through all the thirteen sounds of the same scale of transposition.

Second N. B. It must be observed, that in the feventh measure of this confonant canon, the bass passes from G flat to B natural; this may be taken for a false skip of cadence, but G flat being the same sound as F sharp, both which are distant from B natural seven semitones, consequently is a perfect consonant fifth descending; also the sound as C flat is D flat; from this D flat descending to B natural, as it is done by the superior first part of the canon, may seem a skip of a third low; but D flat being the same sound as C sharp, distant a tone from the same B, consequently it descends only a second, and not a third; also the octave of the same G flat in the second part, passing to F sharp, changes the name, but not the sound, which constitute the same. All which shews clearly, that the different denominations cannot alter the sounds, which are always the same; and also shews, that the distinction of the major and minor semitone is incompetent to the melody and harmony.

Third N. B. When in the beginning of a composition next the key, is found a diefes, in *Englifb* called a fharp, this diefes, or fharp, augments a femitone all notes comprehending its octaves grave and acute, which belong to the fame place where the diefes is put; and when it happens in the course of the composition to augment the fame notes of another femitone higher, is put this mark (x) called improperly diefes enharmonic, but better in *Englifb*, extreme fharp, as mentioned in article VIII. chap. VI. likewife the b mole, which diminishes the natural note of a femitone, when this b mole, or flat, is put at the beginning of the composition next the key, in this case, another b flat being put to the note, which has the flat at the key, the fame note must be diminished another femitone; as for example, the fign b, in the place of the found called B natural, at the key, all the notes of the

the fame B natural, comprehending its octave, grave and acute, are transposed in B flat, which is a femitone lower; and when in the progress of the composition another b mole, or flat, happens to the fame b flat, this diminishes it another femitone, and becomes A natural, which is called B extreme flat, as may be found in fome of the canons.

## ARTICLE II. Of the same Transposition, with the simple Harmonic Combination.

## CANON XLVII. PLATE 33.

THIS canon being in fimple combination, and as the natural fcale is formed with a major third, fifth and octave both perfect, fo likewife in all the transposed fcales, by which the bass passes, the fimple combination must be in the fame order with the third major, perfect fifth and octave, as in the canon.

### ARTICLE III. The same Transposition with the compound Combination of the Seventh.

#### CANON XLVIII. PLATE 33.

I N the first chapter of the first part of this code, Articles iv. and vi. it has been shewn, that in the perfect consonant skip of cadence the seventh is always prepared by the third, and the ninth by the fifth, and refolved into the fifth; but as in the first part of this code the harmony proceeds only from one found to another of the natural fcale, in which the principal note, its fourth, and its fifth, have all their thirds major; and the others, as the fecond, third, fixth and feventh, have all their thirds minor; confequently when the fundamental bass proceeds with the skip of guide in the same natural scale, the seventh will be major, or minor, according to the antecedent third from which it is prepared; also the ninth, if the fifth by which it is prepared is falfe, will likewife be minor; as when the bafs paffes from B to E the ninth is minor, because the fifth to B is F natural, which is a false fifth from which it is prepared, and confequently the ninth being also diftant a femitone from the octave, and the above preparation by the falfe fifth, is fupported, as has been demonstrated in the fecond N. B. of the first article, first chapter, in the first part of this code. But in the mixt progreffion with the fame fkip of cadence, as all the notes which the bafs paffes through are principal of a new transposed scale, and at the same time fundamental guide of the next note, into the fcale is fucceffively transposed, and having, as fundamental guide the major third its indicative note, confequently this fame third must prepare the following feventh, which is fundamental and indicative note, because a principal note of a new scale follows; therefore the fame feventh as fundamental indicative defcending, must be minor, or flat; for this reason the major third, which must ferve as preparation of the above feventh in the antecedent measure, must be diminished in the next measure of a semitone, to make the flat feventh, as may be feen in this canon. But this feventh being diminished a femitone from the note by which it has been prepared, confequently it has been prepared by a different found, the third major being not the fame found of the third minor; therefore the preparation is improper, and rigoroufly falfe, notwithstanding that this fort of preparation are fuppofed good by almost all the composers of mulic, because they make no diffinction betwixt the major and the minor third, when they ferve for the preparation of any difcord; but a better reafon is, that the major third, is the fundamental indicative afcending note, and changing from the major into a minor, it becomes the fundamental feventh, and it is changed in this manner from the indicative note ascending into the indicative defcending note, and the bafs note is also changed from the principal note into the fundamental guide; this kind of feventh may be fupported without preparation, being fundamental. N.B. This



Part II.

N. B. This fort of combination may pass for a few measures in some pathetic expressions; but in a long progression, as in the canon, it becomes tedious and tiresome; for which reason it is better not to change the major third into a minor third for the preparation of the seventh, by which means all the notes preferve the quality of principals of their own scales; but the quality of the fundamental guide is changed into a relative guide to the next note, as it is in the following canon.

# Of the fame Transposition with the Seventh and Ninth, both natural, as in their respective Scales.

## CANON XLIX. PLATE 34.

I N this canon becaufe the feventh is not minor, but natural, as it is in its proper fcale, confequently it is not fundamental, but only a relative guide; the ninth which is added, becomes alfo relative, notwithftanding it may fubfift as fundamental, being the transposition of the natural fcale, and the whole progression is made by perfect fifths from which they are prepared, and into which they are refolved.

## Of transposing the artificial Scale with simple Accord.

#### CANON L. PLATE 34:

THIS cannon shews the manner of transposing the artificial scale with simple combination, namely the minor third, fifth, and octave, by the above same progression; which combination must be used in every sound where the same scale may be transposed. All the notes in this canon are principal of their own scale, and at the same time guides, but relative to their succeeding note, and not fundamental, because their first third is not major, as it must be major in the combination belonging to all fundamental guides, as has been explained.

## ARTICLE IV. The fame Transposition with the compound Accord of the Seventh.

#### CANON LI. PLATE 34.

THIS canon wants no explication; the feventh being very well prepared by the minor third, and very well refolved into the minor third: All notes are principal of their own fcale, and guides relative to the next transposed fcale.

### Of the same Transposition with the Ninth instead of the Octave.

#### CANON LII. PLATE 35.

T HERE are two different ways of joining the ninth to the feventh inftead of the eighth, that is, either with the major or minor ninth. It was mentioned in the fixth Chapter, Article iv. of Book I. that the artificial fcale had two fcales, one for afcending, the other for defcending; in afcending the fixth and feventh are major in all fcales transported from the artificial; but in defcending, the fixth and feventh must be minor; the major fixth in afcending belongs properly to the order of melody; becaufe, as mentioned, the melody cannot gradually pass to the next feventh, which must necessfarily be sharp to afcend to the octave of the principal note; consequently this major fixth can only belong by accident to the bass note in the fundamental guides of the artificial fcales, in changing the same fundamental guides into relative guides, which fundamental guides must have the combination of the major third, fifth, and octave; and when the same accord is joined with the seventh and ninth, these must both be flat, or minor: but in this

prefent

tone

prefent canon, the guide being deprived of its fharp third, which is the neceffary indicative note of the fucceffive scale, confequently it cannot be fundamental, but only relative, which relative guides are always improper in transposing the scale; and when the guide is fundamental, the fifth of the antecedent note must be diminished a semitone for the flat ninth belonging to the fundamental guide, which ninth becomes a minor fecond to the octave of the fame guide; and this fecond to the octave note, or minor ninth to the bafs, being done in moving both parts, confequently is not properly prepared, notwithstanding it derives from the fifth of the antecedent note, but derives from the fame name, and not from the fame found. For example, the fifth to the first principal note C, as in the canon, is G natural, the bass passing into F, the same note G fifth must be diminished one femitone for the minor ninth to the bass note F, and G natural becomes flat; it is the fame G, but being flat, the found is changed, and altered one femitone : Befides the fame combination of the fifth paffing into the ninth proceeds always by falfe fifths one with another, which together become not very pleafant to the ear; for these reasons the major ninth becomes lefs unpleafant, being prepared by the perfect fifth without any alteration in the founds, and in the progression the fifth and ninth move by the fourth and fifth, notwithstanding that it is always improper in a long progression, because the transposition of the fcales must be done by the fundamental guides, and not by the relatives : Therefore the beft way of proceeding with the combination of the ninth, in changing the fcale, is in doubling all the notes of the parts and the bafs; in this manner may be diffinguished the principal notes from the guides, as it is done in the following canon.

N. B. Here is put only a canon with the major, or natural ninth, which canon may be eafily changed in puting to every ninth a flat, to have both the canons of the two manners of imploying the ninth.

# ARTICLE V. Of the fame Transposition in the best Manner.

#### CANON LIII. PLATE 35.

"HIS canon flews the best manner of fucceffively transposing the artificial scale, with and by the proper fundamental guide in compound combination with its major third, perfect fifth, feventh and ninth both flat; this must be done by doubling the notes of every part, and the bafs in all the measures, as it is in the canon. The first bafs note of every measure is a principal note of its own scale joined with its simple combination of minor third, fifth and octave. The fecond note in the fame measure, which is the fame as the first note, is the fundamental guide to the next principal note in the following measure; which note being transposed from the antecedent artificial scale has the same combination of the minor third, fifth and octave, proceeding in the fame manner through the canon. All the first notes are principal, and the second notes of every measure all fundamental guides, with their proper compound combination of the indicative afcending major third, fifth, feventh, and the indicative descending ninth. The first part in the canon, which gives the minor third to the bafs principal note, this minor third is changed in the fecond note of the fame measure into the major third indicative of the following first principal note of the transposed scale in the next measure, in which measure the same indicative third major afcends to the octave of the principal note in the bass; and this octave descends into the feventh with the fecond note of the fame measure; which feventh is refolved into a minor third of the next measure, and this minor third being again changed in the indicative major third, afcends as before to the octave, proceeding continually in the fame manner. The fecond part, which gives the octave to the bafs in the first measure, and in the fecond measure it is changed in the fifth from which it passes in the following measure to the minor third, in the fecond note of the fame measure defcends to the ninth, which is the indicative defcending note of the fundamental guide of the artificial scale, and in the following meafure defcending a femitone it refolves into the fifth; which fifth keeping firm all the measure, in the next measure ascends to the minor third, which descending a full

66

Part II.

tone paffes to the ninth, as before, proceeding always in the fame manner : All the others proceed alfo in the fame manner as the above two firft. By this means the fimple combination belonging to the artificial, and its transposed fcales, paffes into the compound accord with its fecond note, the bass keeping firm its proper fundamental note, and the compound combination is refolved again into the fimple combination in the next measure, as it clearly appears in the canon; in which are fome notes with double flats, as has been mentioned in the *third* N. B. at the end of the first article of this chapter, to which double flats we must take care; and to avoid mistakes, the fame note has been abundantly marked with a crofs under the double flat note, as it is in this canon.

## ARTICLE VI. Of transposing the natural Scale with the Resolution of the Compound Combination ascending.

# CANON LIV. PLATE 36.

THIS canon is also formed by dividing the notes of every measure. The feventh arising from the third in the antecedent measure, is resolved by the second note of the measure in ascending to the octave; and the fifth prepares the ninth which is the first note in the next measure, which ninth is resolved by ascending to the third in the second note of the measure; the third prepares again the seventh as above, and as above it is resolved, proceeding always in the same manner, ascending in contrary motion to the bass.

First N. B. The feventh is properly prepared and refolved, but the ninth would be better refolved by defcending to the octave, for the reason mentioned at the end of the explanation of canon xii. in the first part of this code; but in some cases it may be refolved in ascending, as in the canon.

Second N. B. In this canon all the first notes of every measure are deprived of their thirds, which are the principal harmonic founds; and that happens from the uncommon resolution by ascending, which properly are appogiatures, but somewhat improper, as mentioned before: Therefore this canon has been put here only to shew the manner of preparing and resolving the superior thirds (called falses) by ascending, when on some occasions it becomes necessary in compositions in five parts.

Third N. B. The fame canon may be augmented to more parts in the fame manner as has been done in cannon xviii. which is in ten real parts in two chorufes in the first part of this code, and by the addition of the parts all the compound combination will be full of the falfes also of change, as in the above canon xviii.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

# Of transposing both the Scales, natural and artificial, by the imperfect consonant Skip of Guide in simple Combination.

#### CANONS LV, LVI. PLATE 36.

N fimple progression this imperfect confonant skip to the guide cannot go through I all the founds of the octave, as has been shewn in the first part of this code: But in this mixt progression, as the bass may have all its perfect fifths, it may pass through all the thirteen sounds of the scale of transposition.

Canon lv. has the transposition of the natural scale; and canon lvi. has the transposition of the artificial scale; both with simple combinations. The harmony in the progression by the skip to the guide, cannot be compounded with the seventh and ninth as explained in the first part of this code, but only with the eleventh and thirteenth, or fourth and fixth, the same as in this mixed progression by the same skip; therefore when the compound combination in this progression is wanted, we must have regard to the canons, and their explanation relating to the same consonant imperfect skip in the first part of this code: The only difference between the simple progression and the mixt by the same skip, is the accidental signs sharp, or flat, to be put in their proper places, the combination being the fame.

## CHAP. III.

# Of transposing the two Scales, by the auxiliar perfect Skip of Third low, or Sixth high, in continual Progression.

#### CANONS LVII, LVIII, LIX, LX. PLATES 37, 38.

T has been demonstrated in the first part of this code that the continual progression by I is by the third low, or fixth high, which is the fame, is not fundamental, but derived from the perfect consonant strip of cadence, to which it is added as auxiliar. The fame it is in the mixt progression, as it is apparent by observing the true fundamental bass expressly put under the first common bass supposed fundamental in all these four canons.

Canon lvii. is properly the transposition of the natural scale by the true fundamental bass; but in regard to the supposed first bass feems the transposition of the artificial scale, because in all measures its first thirds are all minor, as being the second third, which composes the perfect fifth in the natural scale; the first third which composes the fame fifth being major is occupied by the same first fundamental bass, consequently it has for its first third, the second third, which is, as abovesaid, minor.

Canon lviii. on the contrary, feems by the first common bass, that passing from the first measure to the fecond, it transposes the scale artificial into the natural, because descending a third low it descends in the fecond third, which composes the fifth, consequently it has always the first third sharp upon its first note, but the transposition is of the artificial scale the first third of the two, which composes the fifth, is minor to the combination of the fundamental

fundamental bass: Therefore it is manifest that the above auxiliar skip depends upon the confonant skip of cadence, but when it is joined with it, becomes itself fundamental, as will be feen in the following Chapter IV.

The harmony of the above two canons proceed in afcending in contrary motion to the two baffes, becaufe the harmony to the first bafs is of fimple combination, notwithstanding that is compound to the fundamental lower bafs.

Canon lix. is the transposition of the natural scale in the manner of the canon xvii. but with the defcending harmony. Alfo the canon lx. which is the transposition of the artificial fcale with defcending harmony, both these two canons, lix. and lx. proceed with the compound combination of feventh and ninth in defcending with the baffes.

First N. B. In the above two canons lix. and lx. the fifth prepares, and is changed into a feventh, which is refolved into the octave, in the common first bass, because it descends only by thirds; fo the ninth into which the feventh is changed by the first skip in the measure of the first common bass; the same ninth into the third by the combination of the fame skip of a third low by the same bas; but the same seventh in the true fundamental bafs, is refolved into the third, and the ninth into the fifth, according to the rules to be observed in the progression of the consonant perfect skip of cadence.

Second N. B. The figures are marked over and under every part: The upper figures belong to the first bass, and those under the same part to the lower fundamental bass; as alfo in all the canons composed with two baffes.

# CHAP. IV.

# ARTICLE I Of the Transposition by the same auxiliar Skip, but joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence in fimple Combination.

#### CANON LXI. PLATE 39.

N this progression the bass descends a minor third, in order to transpose the natural s, scale in the next note higher with the skip of cadence, by which the scale is transposed a tone higher in the next measure. The first notes of every measure may be confidered as principal of a new scale, and the second notes principal, and, at the fame time, relative guides to the next note.

# Of the Transposition of the artificial Scale with the same Progression and Combination.

## CANON LXII. PLATE 39.

HE first notes in every measure in this canon are all principal notes of the fuccessive transposed scales from the first artificial scale; and the second notes are all fundamental guides to the following principal note of the new transposed scale. The bass skips a minor third low, in order to afcend by the following fkip of cadence a full tone above the first note of the antecedent measure. By the skip of third low the octave passes to the major third in the fecond note of the measure, which ferves as indicative note of the next scale.  $\mathbf{T}$ 

69

The

Of

The fifth ascends to the octave, and the third, which is minor, is changed into a perfect fifth, and with this combination the first scale is transposed by the same fundamental skip of cadence a full tone higher, containing the same combination and progression, to the end of the canon.

### Of the fame Transposition and Progression, but the Bass skipping by major and minor Thirds in the natural way.

#### CANON LXIII. PLATE 39.

THIS canon is the fame as the antecedent canon, being only different in the fkipping low by major and minor thirds; with the fkip of minor third the bafs afcends a full tone, and with the major third it afcends only a femitone by the fucceffive fkip of cadence, which is always fundamental.

Of the Transposition of the natural Scale with the same Progression and Combination, but with the fundamental Guide.

#### CANON LXIV. PLATE 40.

THE difference betwixt this canon and canon lxi. is only in the combination of the fecond note of every measure, which notes in canon lxi. are all relative guides, but in this canon are all fundamental guides; confequently the octave to the first bass note must pass to the third in the fecond note of the same measure, as indicative of the same fundamental guide to the next transposed scale.

### The Manner of transposing the artificial Scale by the same Progression and Combination, a Semitone higher.

## CANON LXV. PLATE 40.

T H E auxiliar fkip, when it defcends a major third, or afcends a minor fixth, which in combinations harmonic is the fame, transposes the fcale by the fucceeding perfect fifth of cadence only a femitone higher. The first notes in all the measures are all principals of the new transposed fcale, and the fecond notes all fundamental guides; the progression afcending continually by femitones.

ARTICLE II. Of the Transposition of the natural Scale by the same Progresfion, but with compound Combination.

#### CANON LXVI. PLATE 40.

T HIS canon differs only in the combination from canon lxi. that has the perfect fimple, this the compound combination, as is clear enough in looking on the canon.

#### CANONS LXVII. PLATE 41.

THIS canon also is the fame as the antecedent, the difference is only in the third of the combination to the fkip of cadence, which in the above canon lxvi. it is minor, and in this canon is major, as in the canon in which is the progretion, and its combination, is fufficiently clear.

# Of the Transposition of the artificial Scale by both the above two Skips in seven real Parts.

#### CANON LXVIII. PLATE 41.

T HE transposition in this canon is of the artificial scale, the bass descending a minor third from the principal first note, passes with compound combination into the fundamental guide of the next transposed note by its skip of cadence, which transposed note having only the simple combination, may be considered as simple principal of terminate harmony in a new transposed scale; which principal descending into a fundamental guide for transposing again the scale, continually ascends the octave by full tones. This canon shews at the same time the manner of doubling the two consonant fifth and octave, which is done by adding the simple combination to the compound; the simple combination associated with the bass, and the compound descends in contrary motion to the bass, as it is explained in the canon.

N. B. When the harmonic progreffion is continually done by the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, or by the imperfect confonant fkip of guide, the fimple combination proceeds always in contrary motion to the fundamental bafs; and on the contrary, the compound combination proceeds defcending together with the bafs; but the fame two fkips being joined with the auxiliar fkip of third low, or fixth high, the fimple combination goes with the bafs, and the compound on contrary motion to the fame bafs.

## ARTICLE III. Of the fame Transposition and Progression, but in Compound and full Combination in eight Parts.

### CANON LXIX. PLATE 42.

THIS canon is the fame as the above lxviiith, only with this difference, that all the first notes of the measures in the same lxviiith canon, being principal notes with simple combination, confequently are all of terminate harmony: But in this canon its first notes being with compound combination becomes indeterminate harmony, and they must be confidered as principal notes of indeterminate harmony, and the bass skipping continually a minor third low in the fecond note of the measure, which fecond note is the fundamental guide to the next transposed scale, to which it passes with the skip of cadence. The first fcale is continually transposed a full tone higher; and the bass passes with both its skips through all the femitones of the division of the natural octave. This canon is in compound and full harmony composed by eight real parts, in which the combination of the feventh inftead of refolving into the minor third in the next measure, keeps firm for the full combination, in which it is changed into the eleventh, or fourth, refolving into the perfect fifth in the fecond note of the fame measure. If the composer will not use the full combination, the fourth must be suppressed in refolving directly the seventh into the minor third, which in the next note must be changed into a perfect fifth, by putting a sharp to the antecedent note; and if he suppresses the ninth, he must descend directly to the octave, which also must be altered with a sharp to give the major third indicative in the fecond note of the fame measure to the fundamental bas, which is the fundamental guide to the following new trafposed scale in the next measure.

N. B. When the bass, with its confonant skip of cadence, descends continually a perfect fifth, or ascends a perfect fourth, the parts which descends with him must proceed continually by full tones, as in the canons xlvi. xlviii. xlix. Ii. and lii. and when the same confonant skip of cadence is joined with its perfect auxiliar skip, descending only a minor third low, the bass ascends continually by a full tone, the parts also which ascend with him must

Book II.

muft afcend continually a full tone, as it is done by fimple combination in canon lxi. and in compound combination only by those parts which afcends with the bass by fifths and octaves, as in canons lxii. and lxiv. by their third parts, and in canon lxviii. by its fixth part, and in this prefent canon lxix. by the feventh part. This progression, by afcending or descending continually, its contrary to the convenience of the voice, and to the order of the two scales natural and artificial, which both proceed by tones and femitones: Therefore all progressions which as a has been mentioned in the *third N.B.* at the beginning of this fecond part; and in regard to the auxiliar skips, the best way of using them is descending or as feeding, by skipping fometimes by minor thirds and fometimes by major thirds, as it is proper to the scales in which the harmony proceeds.

# CHAP. V.

# ARTICLE I. Of transposing the natural Scale by the fame auxiliar Skip of Third low, joined with the imperfect Skip to the Guide.

#### CANON LXX. PLATE 42.

N this canon the bass descending a minor third low with the auxiliar skip, and afterwards ascending by the skip of guide, transposes the scale a major third higher; therefore cannot pass through all the sounds of the octave, to which it rises in three skips of guide; the octave being equally divided by three major thirds. This progression can only serve for transposing the scale only one time, and very feldom for two, but never for three times successively, as in the canon.

### ARTICLE II. Of the Transposition of both the natural and artificial Scales, as they happen in their Order, by the two joined Skips as above.

#### CANON LXXI. PLATE 43.

I N this canon, by the two motions of the bafs, the harmony paffes fucceflively all the founds of both the afcending and defcending fcales of transposition; fucceflively tranfposing the natural and artificial fcales a major or a minor third high, which is done by the bafs defcending continually a perfect fifth from the third note of the first principal note, and afterwards afcending a perfect fifth; which third note of the principal note, when it is minor, as in the first measure by the fucceflive scale of the perfect fifth, transposes the fcale in the fame minor third; and when the third of the transposed fcale is major by the fame fucceflive scale of the perfect fifth, transposes the fcale a major third higher, as is apparent in the prefent canon: By this means the harmony passes through all the twentyfive founds, divided by twenty-four femitones of both the ascending and defcending scales of transposition, proceeding always by major or minor third (as the perfect fifth of the antecedent scale requires) combined with its perfect fifth and seventh to the scale of the fifth in the fecond note of the measure, and third, fifth, and octave, to the principal first note.

#### CHAP.

# CHAP. VI.

# ARTICLLE I. Of Transpositions by the imperfect Skip auxiliar of the Third high, joined with the consonant Skip of Cadence.

#### CANON LXXII. PLATE 44.

HESE imperfect auxiliar fkips of third high or fixth low, are always improper in fimple and mixt progreffion by fucceffion, as it is apparent by the canons of this will chapter; in which canons the ill proceedings of the parts cannot be avoided; befides, this fame fkip in a continual progreffion cannot be fundamental, as has been explained by canon xli. therefore it can only be once ufed as fundamental; and, as has been mentioned in the *third* N. B. at the beginning of this fecond part of the code, all the canons in this fame fecond part are made to fhew the manner of transposing the fcales by all the fkips of the fundamental bass, with their proper but different combination of founds. This canon lxxii. is of fimple combination, the bass afcending by major and minor thirds with the auxiliar fkip, and defcending and transposing the fcale a major or minor third low with the perfect fifth of the fkip of guide. The first notes may be confidered as principal in their own fcales, and the fecond following notes in its fame measure as fundamental guides to their next transposed fcales.

### ARTICLE II. The Transposition with compound Harmony.

#### CANONS LXXIII, LXXIV. PLATE 44.

THESE two canons are the fame, only the parts are difpofed in a different order, to fhew the manner of changing the places of the fame parts. Both canons are compounded with the feventh, which may feem as not prepared, being prepared by fuppofition; becaufe the part which begins giving the third to the bafs, defcends a full tone to give the feventh to the next bafs note: Therefore this fame bafs note, notwithftanding it has not been in the antecedent measure the first principal note, but only its third, which by the transposition is changed into principal, confequently the feventh is prepared by the fame which has fubfisted in the antecedent accord; moreover, being a fundamental feventh, it may on this occasion fubfist without preparation, refolving the third into the next measure.

## CANONS LXXV, LXXVI. PLATE 45.

N canon lxxv. the bafs afcending a major third transposes the natural scale a minor third low by the skip of cadence, and proceeding in the same manner it divides the scale in four parts, because the octave contains only four minor thirds, and no more. But the bass associate a minor third, and afterwards descending a perfect fifth with the skip of cadence, descends always a major third; and by this manner it divides the octave in three equal parts, as has been done in canon lxx. but in contrary progression.

U

CHAP.

## CHAP. VII.

# ARTICLE I. Of the Transposition of the same Skip joined with the Skip of Guide.

#### CANONS LXXVII, LXXVIII. PLATE 46.



N canon lxxvii. the bass rifes a natural third, in order to descend with the skip of guide a perfect fourth low, which is the same as ascending a perfect fifth high.

Canon lxxviii. afcends a minor third, and afterwards defcends in like manner a perfect fourth. In this canon the third part defcends continually a full tone contrary to the convenience of the voice, and the bafs paffes through the octave by only fix intervals of a full tone, two femitones being omitted contrary to the order of the fcale; confequently the continual progreffion, as in the canon, cannot well fubfift.

Of transposing the natural Scale by the same auxiliar Skip ascending a major Third, joined with the same Skip of Guide.

#### CANON LXXIX. PLATE 46.

T HIS canon shews the manner of transposing the natural scale a femitone lower, and this is done by the bass ascending a major third, and then descending a perfect fourth, into which the antecedent scale is transposed, and by the same progression the harmony passes through all the femitones of the octave, as is clearly expressed in the canon.



## CHAP. VIII.

# Of the Transposition of both the natural and artificial Scales, proceeding by all the fundamental and auxiliar Skips in compound Combination.

#### CANON LXXX. PLATE 46.

N this last canon the harmony, which is compound, proceeds with all the funda-I k mental motions in transposing the two principal scales. The first notes form the 50005 principal fimple combination of the natural scale; which combination is changed into compound, by defcending the third part from the octave into the indicative feventh, at the fame time of defcending the bass into its proper octave; which octave is also changed from the principal of the scale into the fundamental guide, by which it transposes the scale into F, and by defcending by the auxiliar fkip of third low, it paffes to G and to A, from which changing the skip of third low into the skip of third high, it returns into the first natural scale of C, passing after to G, returning again to C, which becomes the relative guide to F; and from F descending to D, relative guide of G, passes to the same G as relative principal of indeterminate harmony; but by descending in its octave, becomes the fundamental principal guide of the first natural scale, and the first notes in every measure are all principals of indeterminate harmony; and the fecond notes all guides to the next notes. All preparations and refolutions are relative to the particular motions of the bafs, explained in their particular canons. Here ends the harmonic code, in which have been explained all the fundamental laws and rules belonging to the composition of music. Now we shall pass on to examine the relation and application of the fame fundamental laws and rules to the figurate harmony, or common composition of music, in the following book.

#### END of BOOK II.



DELL



# DELL' ARTE ARMONICA:

0 R,

# A TREATISE of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

# BOOK III.

Containing the Figurate Harmony; its Difference from the Fundamental; and the diverse Motions of the Bass, and Parts, with the Diminutions of the fundamental Notes; also its different Compositions and Divisions; with their particular Laws and Rules, over and above the Harmonic Laws.

# CHAP. I.

# ARTICLE I. Of the Figured Harmony.



IG URED harmony is the ufual and common mufic, which may be composed in two, three, four, to fixteen or more parts or voices, with or without inftruments. It is called figured mufic by muficians, becaufe different figures are made ufe of, with variety to time and measure at pleasure; confequently it differs from the fundamental harmony, not only in the diversity of figures and time, but also in the combination of founds, which becomes

inverted by the arbitrary motions of the bass, and of the parts.

## ARTICLE II. Of the different Situation of the Bass in figured Music, by which the fundamental Combinations are inverted.

FUndamental harmony is a composition only harmonic, without any fort of melody, having the notes all equal, and the motions of the bass and parts all limited, otherways it would be impossible to shew, in a proper order, the original rules of combination and X progression

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

progrefion of founds. But the figured harmony being almost always joined with fome particular melody, and as the melody arifes directly from nature, being the product of the natural genius of the composer, it cannot be limited to any particular movements, but only to those which arife from its being joined by and proceeding with the harmony; and as the melody is the principal object in figured music, in which it may be introduced into any one of the parts, and bass, therefore the parts and bass must follow the melody according to its different notes, movement, and time; confequently the bass, and the parts, by following or repeating the subject of the melody, cannot always proceed in a fundamental manner; and because the harmonic combinations are adapted and calculated to the divers diffances, or, as commonly called, intervals, betwixt the parts and the bass, when the bass is not in the fundamental place, the combination of sounds becomes less or more inverted, as the fame bass is far or near its fundamental place, as may diffinctly be seen in the examples 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5. plate 47.

The first example is of fimple fundamental combination: It is divided into three parts; the first division shews the fundamental fimple combination to the principal note of the natural scale C, occupied by the bass; the upper parts composing the same simple accord of 3d, 5th, and 8th, and the octaves of the 3d and 5th. The second division shews the first inversion of the same simple accord, which happens when the bass occupies the third note of the simple fundamental accord, which is inverted in the 3d, 6th, and 8th; the 3d of this inverted combination arises from the fundamental 5th, the 6th from the fundamental octave, and the 8th is the 8th of the fundamental 3d, occupied by the bass. In the third division, the bass being in the place of the fundamental fifth note, the combination fundamental is inverted, and becomes the accord of 4th, 6th, and 8th.

N. B. This fimple fundamental combination where has no more inversion than the two above-mentioned.

The 2d, 3d, and 4th examples are of compound combination to the note G, which is the fundamental guide to the principal note of the natural scale.

The fecond example is divided into four parts; the first division has the fundamental accord 3d, 5th, 7th, and 8th. In the fecond division the bass being in the 3d of the fundamental accord, it becomes inverted into the 3d, 5th, and 6th. In the third division the bass is placed in the fundamental fifth, and the combination or accord is inverted into the 3d, 4th, and 6th. In the last division, the bass being in the fundamental feventh, the fundamental accord is inverted and changed into the 2d, 4th, and 6th.

The third example flews the compound combination of the 3d, 5th, 7th, and 9th, without the octave, and is divided into five parts. By the first division is described the fundamental compound combination of the 3d, 5th, 7th, and 9th. In the second division, the bass being in the third note of the fundamental combination, this fame combination is inverted into the 3d, 5th, and 7th; the 3d of this inverted accord is the 5th in the fundamental, and the 5th and 7th are the 7th and 9th of the fame fundamental accord. The fundamental combination is inverted in the third division into the combination of the 3d, 5th, and 6th, the bass being in the fundamental 5th. In the fourth division the bass is in the fundamental 7th, and the inversion is 3d, 4th, and 6th. The fifth division being the bass in the fundamental ninth, the inversion becomes 2d, 4th, and 6th.

The fourth example is compounded with the addition of the octave to the 7th and 9th, and is alfo divided into five parts. The first division contains the fundamental combination of 3d, 5th, 7th, 8th, and 9th; in the fecond division, the bas being in the fundamental third, the inversion is 3d, 5th, 6th, and 7th. The third division has the bas in the fundamental fifth note, and the inversion becomes 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th. In the fourth division, the bas being in the fundamental 7th, the fundamental combination is inverted

78

inverted into the 2d, 3d, 4th, and 6th; and in the laft division, the bass being in the ninth fundamental, the inversion is 2d, 4th, 6th, and 7th. These four examples, as they are explained, shew all the general inversion of the fundamental simple and compound combination of founds in the natural scale, which may ferve also as examples for all the other scales.

The fifth example is in full combination, as being composed by the eight original founds difpofed by thirds, which may be infinitely protracted; confequently the invertion cannot always be apparent, becaufe in whatfoever note of the fundamental true accord the bafs is, it has a like accord difposed in the same order by successive thirds, as is to be seen in example v. plate 47. Therefore it may appear difficult to diffinguish the fundamental true bass from the common, both having the same accord : But in observing the movement and fituation of the bass, is easily known the true fundamental. The fundamental bass cannot proceed by conjoint degree, but by its confonant and auxiliar fkips; confequently when it moves by conjoint degree, only one of the two joined notes can be fundamental. For supposing the bass in the note C passing into the nearer note D, if C is fundamental, D cannot be fundamental, but only one of the notes belonging to the fimple fundamental accord of its two confonant or two auxiliar fkips. In the confonant fimple accord of C, as principal, it cannot fubfift, nor in its two auxiliar skips of 3d low and high : The skip of 3d low from C is A, and the skip of 3d high is E, to which D cannot be 3d, 5th, or 8th; confequently it is apparent, that it can only belong to the other confonant skip of 5th high or 4th low, which is G guide to the above principal C, and D is the fifth note of the fame guide G. But if D is the fundamental note, C can only be the third note of A; which A is the relative guide to D, and by the order of the antecedent and following progression of the fame bass notes, is known which of the two joined notes is the true fundamental. The fame must be observed in regard to the two auxiliar skips of third high or low. When the bass proceeds by thirds, only two can be fundamental; for example, the bass descending from C to A, and fucceffively from A to F, both C and A may be fundamental notes; C as principal, defcending in A by its defcending auxiliar fkip, which may be the relative guide to the note D; in this cafe the following note F, into which the bass descends from A, as above, can only be the third of the fimple combination belonging to the fame D its principal relative note; and being fundamental C and F, the note A can only be the third to the note F as principal, and C as relative, or fundamental Guide. The fame happens with the other auxiliar skip, as has been demonstrated by the canons of the harmonic code relating to the fame two auxiliar fkips, where has been fhewn, that the bafs, as fundamental, can only proceed with one skip of third, but following another skip of third, must be joined by one of the two confonant skips, which properly are only the two true principal fkips fundamental.

N. B. The inversion of the eleventh note of the fundamental accord has been omitted in this article, but it will be explained in the following fifth article.

## ARTICLE III. Of the Inversions by the Bass Syncopes.

**I** T has been mentioned in the first article of this prefent book, that the common bass is not always in the fundamental place, but very often in the place of one or another of the fuperior parts; and that happens when the bass has occasion to imitate or contrast fome proposed melody, or to fill the harmony, or fome other purposes as may ferve the genius of the composer; which is the cause that the fundamental notes are changed, many in fyncopes, many in fimple or double, but different notes, and many other in diminished notes. Syncopes, which is the fubject matter of this article, is so called when two notes are tied together as if they were only one, as is to be seen in example vi. plate 48. This example is divided into two parts, the first part contains in general the fecond part, but particularly the two extreme staffs, namely the upper extreme staff, keeping in the notes which gives the fimple combination to the fundamental bass in the low extreme staff; and also the fame

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

The

fame notes ferve to the diverse combinations with the fix basses contained in the second division subdivided in three parts, every one having two basics proceeding one after another, the first subdivision containing the basses 1. and 2. gives to the bass fundamental, alternatively, the fifth and octave, doubling the fame notes of the fuperior notes. In the fecond division both baffes gives alternatively the ninth, and the two last in the third sub-division the feventh. The two baffes in the first fub-division skip from the first note one octave higher for paffing into the fifth: The other two, in the fecond fub-division, fkip a fifth higher, by which is prepared the ninth; and the other two, in the last fub-division, arise a third high, preparing the feventh to the fundamental bafs; and altogether the fix baffes, with the three parts in the upper extreme, make the fimple combination of 3d, 5th, and 8th, all doubled and joined with the compound combination of the 7th and 9th, to every note of the fundamental bass. The two first basses 1. 2. are the same as the two parts upon the bass in the first canon of the code, doubling the fifths and octaves of the superior parts, as is done in canon iii. The other two baffes 3. and 4. are the fame as the two parts in canon vi. giving the ninth to the fundamental bass, prepared by the fifth and resolved into the fifth; and the two last basses, 5. and 6. are the same as the parts in canon iv." giving the feventh to the fame fundamental bafs; which feventh is prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, as it is in canon iv. But in regard to every bafs feparately, in the three divisions, the superior simple combination of the three parts in the first staff, become all inverted in different manners, namely in the first division the inversion to the two baffes 1. 2. is the 4th and 6th refolving into the 3d and 5th: So the baffes in the fecond fubdivision, when they have changed alternatively the first combination into the 4th and 6th, by the skip of guides, this accord is changed by the next fyncope into the 2d, 4th and 7th. The fame in regard to the two baffes 5. and 6. in the third division, which baffes ascending a third one after the other, change their first combination of 3d and 6th, which is inverted in the following measure 2d, 4th, and 6th, and it is refolved again into the 3d and 6th. All these different inversions joined together with the upper three parts, and the fix baffes, make the fundamental compound combination of 3d, 5th, 7th, and 9th, to every note of the fundamental bass, as it is apparent in the above example vi. plate 48. which fhews all the invertions by fyncopes of the compound harmony belonging to the perfect confonant skip of cadence of indeterminate harmony.

N. B. It must be observed, that in a composition where the bass fyncope is a false, the fame false cannot subsist in the other parts, without proceeding by octaves, which is improper, and not truly harmonic: And when there are two parts which proceed, one by the 7th and the other by the 9th, over the fundamental bass, as it happens in compositions of eight or more real parts, the superior parts must proceed with only the simple combination, as in the above example. But when the eight parts are all doubled and tripled, the 7th and 9th may subsist also in the fuperior parts, provided the resolution be done on the contrary motion, namely, one ascending the other descending; or elfe by change, as has been shown.

## ARTICLE IV. Of the varied and diminished Bass Notes.

T HE fimple doubled varied notes are exprefied in example vii. plate 49, which fhews the invertion of the fundamental notes in fimple combination, and example viii. in the fame plate, fhews the invertion of the compound accord by the 7th and 9th. The first example is composed by the fimple combination of the three fuperior parts at the top, to the fundamental bass at the bottom of the example, and the four inclosed basses made the inversion. The other example viii. which also has the fimple combination betwixt the upper parts and the fundamental, but the four inclosed basses as feending one third, and after descending gradually, make the compound combination of the 7th and 9th to the fundamental, inverting in that manner the fimple combination, as is clearly shewn by the figures at every one of the fame four basses. The following plate 50, has the example ix. which is divided into four parts. The first part has five staffs; in the first staff is the fundamental bass, and the more common divisions and diminutions of the fundamental notes are in the following four bass, namely in the first common bass the fundamental notes are diminished every one into four, proceeding from the first note to the third, and returning to the first. The second common bass diminishes the above four notes of the first common bass. The third common bass has its diminished notes by skips, and the last bass has the diminished notes of the fame third bass. The second division contains a continual progression descending by thirds, shewing that the same progression is subordinate to the perfect constant skip of cadence, as has been demonstrated in the canons of the auxiliar start sports, with which is formed the third canon, making eight real parts in fimple combination, but in figured harmony.

The third part or division, contains the diminutions of the fundamental notes distributed in four different common basses; the first ascending a third, and the second a fifth, defeending together by fixths gradually to the notes of every following measure: The third and fourth basses proceed in the same manner, but beginning a measure after the first two. The fourth division contains two basses, which proceed one after the other, by the strip of an octave falling into the fifth of the principal in the middle of the same measure, and passing to the third of the principal note in the following measure, as is clearly expressed in the same example. The inversions of all the common basses are expressed by the figures marked to every one, and all their diminished notes come from the fundamental notes in the first staff, which needs no further explanation.

N. B. It must be observed, that when a common bass passes particularly in accented time, with its varied and diminished notes, by the fifth of the fundamental combination, which fifth has its proper fundamental combination when it is the guide, but in the diminutions of the principal notes, being confidered only as a simple fifth of the fame principal note, as in the above example ix. it is in the basses 4, and 5, of the first division, in which they defeed a fourth from C to G, which G may be supposed the fundamental guide, but in the fame diminution it is only a simple fifth belonging to the principal note C, and not its Guide; therefore the composer is obliged to put the proper figures of 4, and 6, which is the inversion of the principal note by the simple fifth, for avoiding mistakes in the accompanyment in the organ or harpficord; as has been done in the fame example in the first measure of the above basses, and in the following measure by a line over the fame measure, which fignifies the continuation of the first accord.

Second N. B. In the above four examples, 6, 7, 8, and 9, all the baffes are expressed, two by two, which two baffes may be joined into one; the fame disposition in two baffes being only done for shewing the manner of dividing one bass into two, when it is wanted, as in compositions in eight or more parts; the fame manner may be applied to the parts, and particularly, as it is done by the four baffes in the third division of example ix. plate 50. but in the first division of the fame example, is only expressed the diminutions and fubdiminutions of the fame diminutions. These diminutions and fubdiminutions of the principal notes arising properly from the melody, which being arbitrary to every one, may be produced in diverse and infinite manners, confequently may be also done in diverse and almost infinite manners at the pleasure and according to the genius of the composer.

Third N. B. The refolution of the ninth, which is refolved into the fifth of the fundamental note, as has been fhewn in its proper canons, when it is inverted by the common bass, may seem improperly and falsely refolved, because the bass forming the false major fecond with the indicative ascending third, which ascending a tone, and the bass descending a tone in the following measure, the second is refolved into a fourth, which may be confidered as false, or discord; but the same fourth is the octave of the principal note, and the bass in descending a tone passes into the guide of the fame principal note; which two V

notes

notes may fubfift together, as immoveable fundamental baffes of its own scale : Moreover, the fame note of the guide, in which is refolved the bafs, has fubfifted in the preceeding combination in the fuperior part, as feventh to the fame common bafs, and as octave to the fundamental bass, resolving the seventh in descending to the same note, which is the octave betwixt the upper part and the common bafs, giving both together the fifth to the fundamental bass; confequently the bass refolves the second with the upper part, which gives the octave to the fundamental into the fourth, this being the fifth fundamental. This manner of refolving the ninth, when it is occupied by the common bafs, is not commonly underftood or known by many compofers, which ordinarily refolves the fuperfluous fecond or ninth into the fundamental bass by ascending a semitone together with the parts, or descending into the same fundamental note, which is a fundamental guide, before the parts and the fundamental bass moves, which resolution makes the accord fundamental in the fame common bass; but the best way is the resolution, as it has been done in the canons, of the harmonic code; notwithstanding the other two common manners of refolving the fame ninth may also fubfist, being the fame ninth or fecond inverted, refolved in ascending with the parts a femitone or a tone, becomes a deceptive cadence, and refolving in defcending a tone before the moving of the parts, by this means passes into the guide of the next note, and in both manners the refolution is made by a third; therefore it is arbitrary to the compofers.

Fourth N. B. In this article is only explained the reversion of the fimple and compound combination by the common bafs, with the fkip of cadence, and the other fkip to the guide is omitted, because when the reversion of the perfect confonant fkip of cadence is known, the order of the reversion of the other fundamental and auxiliar fkips will be underftood; only it must be observed, that the imperfect confonant fkip to the guide has no proper reversions, only by the fourth and fixth, and this reversion cannot be done naturally from the bafs, without proceeding by falses of anticipations, which may be only supported once or in the perfect cadences. For that which regards the diminutions of the fundamental notes, is the fame, as it has been explained alfo for dividing the baffes; only it must be observed in the fkip of cadence, the fecond bafs, or part, repeats the fubject into the fourth high, or fifth low; but in the fkip to the guide, the repetition must be done by the fifth high or fourth low; alfo in the division of the parts, or baffes proceeding by the auxiliar fkips, the repetition must be by the third high, or low, as it is the auxiliar fkip, but this rule may be changed in the transposition of the fcale by imitations.

# ARTICLE V. Of the forme Equivocal Combinations.

THESE equivocal combinations must be diffinguished into two different forts or manners. In one manner the founds are equivocal, it not being poffible to know where, or in what fcale, the fame combination may pass by only hearing it; but when the founds are properly denominated in their notes, and figured under the bafs note, immediately is known the next combination. The other fort of equivocal combinations are equivocal not only in their founds, but also in their proper denomination. The above first fort will be explained by two following articles vi. and vii. Now in this article we shall explain the fecond fort of these equivocal combinations, which are derived from the syncopes of the common bass, by which are tied two, three, or more notes. These two, three, or more notes, may be one of the two principal stable and immoveable fundamental basses, both of which have the right of fupporting all combinations of the fimple harmonic progreffion, which may be made by the original founds of its own fcale, without moving from their flable places, as mentioned in the first article of the fourth chapter, book the first: Confequently the different combinations of the fuperior parts are not confidered as inverted, but as proceeding naturally in their own scale, successively refolving their combination by their own motions, as it is expressed in example x. plate 51. which example is divided by three bars, making three measures; in the first measure is described the simple combination

Book III.

to the fundamental bass C; in the second measure, the parts moving, change the simple combination into the compound accord 2d, 4th, 5th, and 7th, which properly belong to G as fundamental guide in the scale of C, as 3d, 5th, and 7th; in the following measure, the parts moving again, refolve the false accord done to the bass in the antecedent measure, reftoring the first simple combination to the bass, which has continued firm in the principal note C. The following example xi. in the fame plate, is alfo divided by three bars or measures; in the first and second measure is the same combination as in the first example x. but in the third measure, the parts keeping firm the combination of the fundamental guide G made in the antecedent measure, the bass resolves the false accord of the second measure, descending one note, which is the third sound to the combination of the guide G. In the first of these two examples the bass being always firm in the principal note C, and the parts moving, makes the falle combination in the fecond measure; which falle or difcord is refolved in the third measure by the same parts; the bass must be confidered as stable and immoveable foundation of all the original founds of its octave or its own fcale. In the other example xi. of the fame plate 51, the bass resolving in the third measure the false combination of the antecedent measure, shews that it is a common bass, because being fundamental in the first measure, and keeping firm the same note in the second measure, in which the parts proceed from the first combination of the principal to that of the guide, and after in the third measure the parts keeping firm, and the bass resolving the false combination of the fecond measure in defcending as above-faid, shews that the same bass that has made the difcord, or false combination in keeping firm in the second measure, and not the parts in moving, to which movement the bass should have followed skipping to the guide; but in keeping firm the note in the fecond measure, it is changed into the eleventh note, which is the fifth third in the harmonic fystem belonging to the full combination of the guide, and in this manner makes the inversion in the same eleventh note, which becomes a fecond below the fundamental fifth note D, and a fourth below the fundamental indicative defcending 7th F, alfo a fifth with the octave of the fundamental guide G, and a 7th major with the indicative fundamental ascending third; all which is refolved by the fame bass, as common bass descending into the note B, namely the second into the third, the 4th and 5th into the false 5th and 6th, and the major 7th into the octave; which all together, the bass with the parts, make the fundamental combination of the 3d, 5th, 7th, and 9th, to the fundamental bass G not expressed.

This is the explanation of the eleventh note of the guide mentioned but not explained in the N. B. at the end of article ii. of the fame chapter.

By the two above examples may be eafily known and diftinguished the fundamental bass from the common bass, which confists only in observing the resolutions of the falses, if they are done by the bass, or by the parts; it being a general rule, that the resolution of all falses, or discords, must be done by the same parts which make the same falses; which general rule has some exceptions, as has been seen in the canons of the harmonic code.

## ARTICLE VI. Of some particular Inversions arising from the artificial Scale.

I N the fixth chapter and fourth article of the first book, has been demonstrated, that the artificial scale is divided into two different scales, one ascending, the other descending. In ascending the 6th and 7th sounds are necessarily major, or sharp, but in descending are both minor, or flat. This is the cause that the inversion of the compound combination with the 7th and 9th to the fundamental guide, becomes somewhat diverse from the like inversion of the fame combination in the natural scale. The figures which represent the above false combination, are the fame in both scales natural and artificial, but the founds are not the fame; and that is also the cause that these inversions are called equivocal accords, or combinations, as will be explained in the next article. When the common bass in the natural scale occupies the indicative 3d of the fundamental guide, the inversion becomes 3d, 5th, and 7th (as has been shown) the fame is in the artificial scale; but the

Book III.

the 7th derived from the defcending indicative minor 9th of the fundamental guide, must be marked flat. When the fame bass is in the fifth note of the fundamental guide, the inversion is 3d, 5th, and 6th, in the natural scale, the same as in the artificial scale, but the fifth of the common bass derived from the minor or flat 9th, must be diminished a femitone, and figured as a false 5th; the fame also when it occupies the place of the 7th of the fundamental guide, its 3d being the fame flat 9th, confequently must be flat; and the accord is the fame in the natural scale, namely 3d, 4th, and 6th, but the 3d in the natural fcale is naturally major, derived from the 9th, which is major, and the 4th, derived from the indicative sharp 3d, must be marked sharp: The interval betwixt the above 3d flat and 4th fharp in the combination of the artificial fcale, is compounded of one fecond; but exceeding a femitone the major natural fecond; confequently the found is the fame as the flat third, being composed of the fame interval, notwithstanding it is confidered as a fecond, because the mark, or sign of sharp, or flat, alters only the sounds, but not the names of the founds, as has been before-mentioned. It is the fame when the common bafs occupies the fundamental indicative flat 9th, the inversion is 2d, 4th, 6th, and 7th; the interval betwixt every one of these sounds is of flat 3d, but it is not so in the natural scale, and this difference derives becaufe the natural notes and figures in the natural scale represent the natural founds with their proper names; but in the artificial fcale the figures and notes represent the names of the fame notes, but not their proper founds. In the natural scale the found named A is diftant from the following note B the interval of a tone, which is the fame as two femitones; but in the artificial fcale (fuppofing the fcale of 3d flat) the fame A being flat in the fundamental combination of the guide G, as its defcending indicative 9th, becomes diftant three femitones from the note B natural, which must be major or fharp, as indicative alcending 3d of the guide G; and the above interval, from A flat to B natural, being three femitones, confequently the found corresponds to the flat third, not to the fecond, as before told; but B being the fucceffive fecond name of A, is called a fecond; and when the fame A flat ferves as 7th to B natural, this 7th being composed by nine femitones, which properly is the interval of a major 6th, but being the fame A flat, the feventh name from B, is named and marked as a 7th, which is diffinguished by the the furname of 7th diminished. This is the difference of the combination of founds between the natural and artificial fcale.

### ARTICLE VII. Of the different Uses arising from the Inversion of the fundamental Accord of Guide in the artificial Scale.

**F** R O M the explanation of the above article it is manifest that the compound combination, with the major 3d to the fundamental bass note, joined to the 5th, 7th, and flat 9th, in the artificial fcale, when the fundamental bafs note is abstracted, the following four notes, namely the 3d, 5th, 7th, and 9th, make a combination of four fucceffive flat thirds, forming an octave, divided into four equal parts, every one in the fame degree of harmony with the other; confequently all together joined, in whatfoever manner they may be inverted, are perfectly harmonic, therefore they need no preparation nor refolution; and from one of the faid combinations may be paffed to another like combination, composed by four different flat thirds, without refolving the antecedent combination : But these passages without refolution can only fubfift for two times, or at most for three, because the octave being divided by twelve femitones, by which the octave becomes composed of thirteen founds, and the above combination confifting in five founds forming four intervals, each divided by three femitones, every one of which is a fourth part of the faid twelve intervals, by which the octave is divided, as above-faid; confequently when from the accord of the first femitone is transposed the fame accord to the second femitone, and after to the third semitone, proceeding to the other femitone, the progression of the fourth femitone becomes the fame, as has been done by the first femitone and also of the others respectively one to another : Moreover, being the fame accord of indeterminate combination and progression, it must at last be refolved into one of the two confonant skips fifth low or fifth high, otherwife the fenfation

fenfation will be tired in prolonging the expected conclusion of the harmony promifed by the first of the above accords. These accords or combinations derives from three femitones whatfoever may be, but following one another, as in example xii. plate 51. Every note of the above combinations may be confidered as fundamental indicative afcending 3d, leading in their next femitone, which is the principal note of the following scale, confequently every one must have their proper fundamental bass note a sharp 3d below as guide to the fucceeding fcale, as may be feen in example xiii. of the fame plate 51, in which example is fupposed the second semitone C sharp, described in example xii. the combination of which is C sharp, E natural, G natural, B flat, and C sharp, which accord forms a combination of four fucceflive flat thirds. The common bass in the same example is suppofed always in the indicative afcending 3d, in every one of the four divisions, by which it is evident, that fuppofe C fharp the indicative afcending third leading into the next femitone D, the fundamental guide must be the note A distant a major third from C sharp, paffing together to D the principal note of the indicative fcale. If it is supposed that the note E of the fame combination be the indicative afcending note leading in F 3d flat, C natural must be its fundamental guide, but C sharp becoming the 9th of the fundamental combination, must be changed into D flat, which is the same found as C sharp, because this name of C sharp cannot subsist in the scale of F 3d flat. If G natural in the same accord is confidered as being the afcending indicative 3d, leading in A flat with its 3d flat, the fundamental note of its guide must be E flat its indicative 3d to the above note G natural, its fifth B, D flat is 7th, and F flat its indicative defcending 9th, which D flat and F flat are the fame founds as C sharp and E natural. If at last it is supposed that the note B flat of the fame accord, C fharp, E natural, G natural, and B flat, be the indicative afcending 3d leading in C flat, the fundamental guide must be G flat; but for the convenience of the eafier scale, the name of B flat must be changed into A sharp, and C flat into B natural, being the fame founds; confequently the fundamental guide G must also be changed into F sharp; A sharp being its indicative note leading in B natural, subfissing in the rest of the combination, namely C sharp as fifth to the guide F sharp, and E, G, both natural, as 7th and 9th flat to the fame guide F sharp, as is clearly described in the above example xii. from which it is apparent, that the combination composed by four fucceffive flat 3ds, may pass into four different principal, but artificial scales : Moreover, if these four artificial scales are changed into natural, namely, instead of giving to them the flat third, is given the major 3d, the fame four scales are changed from being principal of their own scale into guides to four other artificial scales, as it is expressed in example xiv. plate 52. the reason is, that paffing from the first bass note C sharp of the same accord into the note D, this fame D having its 3d sharp, cannot be a principal note of its own scale, because the seventh to the antecedent note C fharp, being B flat, it cannot fubfift in the scale of D 3d sharp, where B muft be natural; confequently the fame D muft only be confidered as fundamental guide paffing into G flat 3d, which is the fame as the above B flat in the first combination, as it clearly appears in the above example xiv.

First N.B. The first baffes in these two examples are both common, and not fundamental, being in the indicative alcending 3d of the fundamental accord, but they may fubfift alfo in every one of the notes of the above fame combination, namely in the 5th, 7th, and 9th, confequently the combinations and the refolutions become inverted, and all different one from another. For example, if the common bass is in the fifth note of the fundamental accord, which is E natural in the first combination of both the examples, the first accord being the bass in the note, C sharp is 3d, 5th, and 7th, flat; the bass in the fifth E being the first combination, is inverted into 3d, 5th flat, and 6th sharp; and the resolution is not afcending, but in defcending one note to the principal; and the bass being in the note G, which is the 7th flat of the fundamental accord, the inversion is 3d flat, 4th sharp, and 6th natural, and the refolution defcends a tone in the third note of the fcale. And the bass, when it is in the last note of the combination which refers to the 9th of the fundamental accord, the inversion is a fecond extreme sharp 4th and 6th natural, in the resolution of which the common bass descending a note, the accord becomes the 4th and 5th, or the 4th

Ζ

4th and 6th, which feems as a falfe refolution, but is the properest and original resolution, as has been explained in the third note of the fourth article of this chapter. The above explained combination derived from three semitones following each other, as in example xii. plate 51. may be called equivocals, because they may pass into different scales, without being known, by hearing the sounds, where their resolution will be; but when they are properly known and figured, the succeeding scale is presently known.

Second N. B. The above-faid combinations, refolutions, and arbitrary passages in different scales, shew evidently the impossibility of that so much celebrated division of the tone and semitone fubfifting in major and minor; which division never can have fubfifted in practice; but if it has fublisted, must be only in the first time of the Greeks, where was used the lira of the four ftrings. Notwithstanding the above distinction of the tone and femitone into major and minor, as it is now fuppofed true, certain, and unquestionable, not only by fo many writers in mulic, which following the opinion of Ptolomy, and after of Boetius, have shewn their skill in calculating the reasons of the supposed intervals betwixt these different tones and femitones, to find out a just manner of transposing the Greek diatonic scale, knowing nothing, or very little, in the practice of the harmonic art; but also by almost all the prefent practitioners and compofers in music, shewing at the fame time that they know nothing of the true harmonic theory, which must be formed and calculated, not by the mathematic rules, which have nothing to do with the human fenfation, but by practice; the faculty of forming perfectly the fame scale has been provided according to the general constitution of mankind, by the same nature, and confirmed by rules of practice derived from physic, namely for the general constitution of the common human hearing.

# ARTICLE VIII. Of some irregular Combinations, which happen in the artificial Scale.

I N the first note at the end of the second article in the third chapter of the first book, has been mentioned, that besides the intervals of the two seconds major and minor, the two fifths perfect and falfe, the two fixths and fevenths major and minor, also of the perfect octave; there is a fecond, which is composed of three femitones, commonly called the fuperfluous or extreme fharp fecond, being equal to a flat third, one 5th, and one 6th, called fuperfluous, the 5th formed with a femitone more than the perfect fifth, also the fuperfluous 6th a femitone more than the major 6th, the 5th fuperfluous being equal to the minor 6th, and the superfluous 6th to the minor 7th. Also a 7th, called diminished, composed of nine femitones, being equal to the major 6th, and an octave, also called fuperfluous, containing a' femitone more than the perfect octave, being equal to the minor 9th. The combinations with every one of these above intervals only happen in the combinations of the founds of the artificial scale, because it has two scales, one ascending and the other defcending, as mentioned and explained in the first book; and that happens when two founds of these different scales are joined in one combination, namely, one in the common bass, the other in the superior parts. The extreme sharp 2d derives by being joined to the flat oth of the fundamental guide, with the tenth note, which is the octave higher of the sharp indicative third; for example, the 9th in the fundamental combination of the guide of the artificial scale C 3d flat, is A flat, and the octave of the indicative 3d is B naturally sharp; from A flat to B natural is one interval of three semitones, which is the fame as the interval of a minor, or flat 3d; but because the name of the found B is the fecond after A, it is called a fecond, as mentioned before. The fame of the fuperfluous fifth. For example, fuppoling the artificial A natural, its feventh note which is G, is naturally minor in defcending from the octave of the principal A; but in ascending from the principal A to its octave the same G must be sharp, forming a major 7th to the fame principal, and confequently altered with one more femitone, as has been explained in its proper place; and when it happens that the fame note G fharp is joined with the bass note C, which is the minor 3d of the principal, this combination makes the *fuperfluous* 

fuperfluous fifth; on the contrary, G being natural in defcending, gives the perfect fifth to the fame bass C, as in the example xv. plate 52. the interval of the fuperfluous fifth is the fame as that of the minor 6th.

The fuperfluous 6th happens (fuppofing the fame above fcale A natural) when the common bass descends gradually from A to G natural, and successively from G to F also natural, G being the feventh note and F the fixth of the principal note in the fcale, as may be feen in the above example xv. in which the fecond part in the last measure but one having continued the antecedent measure in E, its fifth note of the fimple accord, giving fucceffively to the common bass the accord of 5th, 9th, and 7th, at last it resolves the note E in D sharp, which is computed a major 6th to the bass note F natural, but the just interval betwixt these two founds D sharp and F natural, is a minor 7th, which interval respectively to the name is called fixth with the furname of fuperfluous; and the fame D sharp being not composed in either of the two scales ascending or descending, consequently the falfe accord becomes of falfe relation; notwithstanding that the ear is not offended, for the reason of descending the common bass from the octave of the principal note A, in which is combined with the fimple accord, paffes gradually to F 3d below, which in the descending scale must be natural, and still remaining in the same F which belongs to the fame artificial descending scale A with the rest of its accord, it keeps firm in the sensation the remembrance of the fame scale; and the bass being in the bass of the above combination covers partly the harfh found of the fuperfluous fixth, in a manner, that by following the refolution, when all the parts are properly combined with the fame fuperfluous fixth, it becomes extremely pleafant, for the fame fuperfluous fixth afcending to the octave of the fundamental guide of the scale, and the bass descending into the same fundamental guide, both proceeding by femitones, which is the fhorter way, always used by nature, and confequently the more agreeable. See the above example xv. plate 52. As to the fuperfluous octave, it happens when the common bass descends in the supposed scale of A natural, from the octave of the fame A to G natural, which G must be compounded with the octave for the preparation of the 9th to F, into which the fame bass descends from G, and the fame 9th is refolved into F sharp, which is the superfluous octave to F natural; this superfluous octave F sharp is a minor 3d to D sharp, which is the above explained fixth fuperfluous; and the fame D sharp being the 3d sharp to B natural, which becomes the guide to the following note E; confequently F sharp is the perfect fifth to the above guide B, by which accord it feems like a fundamental guide to E, but is only relative guide to the principal fundamental guide of the scale A natural; and notwithstanding the above B is only a relative guide, being the first fucceeding guide of the principal guide E, may have also arbitrarily its 3d sharp, instead of its minor 3d; which B is diftinguished clearly for a relative guide by the bass subsisting in the note F natural, which cannot be comprised in the scale of E, but only in the descending scale of A, and the superfluous octave F sharp, must fubfist in the other ascending scale; consequently it is evident that the note E is not the principal scale, but its fundamental guide, and the note B the relative guide of the fundamental guide E having the arbitrary privilege of natural minor 3d, to be changed at pleafure into a major 3d, must be feen in the above example xv. plate 52, where, in the fecond measure of the example, is described the false combination of the superfluous fifth, and in the fecond time of the fifth measure both the superflous sixth and octave are all marked with (\*).

In regard to the feventh diminished, is the interval betwixt the ascending indicative major third, and the descending indicative flat 9th, which interval is the same as that of the major 6th, as has been before explained.

N.B. The combination with fifth, fixth, and octave fuperfluous, must be used with judgment, and very feldom, particularly the fuperfluous octave, which is the fame interval of a minor 9th, because being obliged to resolve itself by ascending a full tone for giving the sharp 3d G to the fundamental guide E, this resolution becomes fomewhat improper, and

and a little harsh, for the reason that all falses existing in the second octave, have their proper resolution in descending, and may be used in ascending only when all the parts are doubled.

## ARTICLE IX. Of the different Motions and Variations of the Parts.

S the bass in the figured harmony must be confidered as one middle part of the com-A bination, being obliged to proceed not only by fkip, but also by conjoin'd degree, for the reasons mentioned in the second article of this present chapter; so the parts are obliged to proceed in the fame manner for the fame mentioned reafons; therefore by proceeding not only gradually, but also by skips, they pass from the place of one part to the place of another part, as it may be feen in the example xvi. plate 53. This example is described in five staffs, in the first staff is the supposed melody, in the second staff is the fame melody, but varied by the diminutions of the principal notes; the third staff has the principal notes of the proposed melody; and the fourth staff contains the combination, which is compound, belonging to the fundamental bass in the last staff: In the same combination the principal notes of the melody in their correspondent notes, as they proceed in the third staff, are marked thus (\*), by which is shewn the progression of the principal notes of the melody paffing from one part to another in their combination by fkips. The diminutions in the fecond staff may be varied gradually, or in skips, in almost infinite manners, not only by all the upper parts, but also by the common bass, as mentioned; but in whatfoever manner these diminutions may be done, it must always be correspondent to the fundamental combination fimple, or may be compound; also the resolutions, when the variation is made by fkips, must be done from the note, which is nearest to the fundamental refolution. But for a better, and more diffinct explanation, not only for the different variations and diminutions of the parts, but also of the bass notes, we have chosen to examine the beginning of the first sonata, a violin folo in the fifth opera of Coreli (being generally known in all countries) for explaining the divers manners of variations by fyncopes, fkips, and all fort of paffages relating to the above purpofe.

This first sonata which is composed in the key of D 3d sharp, consequently is a transpofition of the natural scale a tone higher, begins in a kind of introduction in common time grave, composed in two measures. The first measure has the upper part of the octave of the note D, which is the principal confonant note of the fcale occupied by the bafs; in the middle of the fame measure, after a little fyncope of the first note, the part skips to the 3d of the accord, from which immediately it defcends gradually to the first note again, paffing to the note B in the fecond measure; which B may belong to E, as its relative guide, being its perfect fifth, or to the note G to which the note B is its 3d; but the author in figuring 4th and 6th, inftead of 2d and 4th, has chose G, being of the better progreffion, particularly in the beginning of a composition, because the same G is the immediate fub-principal relative to the principal of the above scale D, and confequently the more natural, and pleafant progreffion or modulation; and the bafs keeping firm the note D at the beginning of the fecond measure, makes the false accord to the part, which paffing into B transposes the harmony into the note G as fundamental relative, and the inversion is the fourth and fixth, the fourth is the octave of the fundamental bass not expressed in the accord, and the fixth is the note B of the part; and because the progression passes immediately to A by the motion of the part, which after the note B descends to A octave of the principal guide of the scale, and the antecedent fundamental note G which cannot gradually alcend to the fame note A in a fundamental progression, consequently the fundamental must descend with its auxiliar skip of 3d low into the note E, which is the relative guide of the principal guide A, and the note B of the part becomes the fifth of the fame relative guide E, descending to A octave of the principal guide, and the bass with its relative fkip of cadence afcending to the fame note A principal guide, and the continued note D in the common bafs, becomes the 7th to the relative guide E, refolving

in

in C fharp 3d of the fame principal guide A, and the part defcending with the following note to F 3d of the octave of the principal first note of the scale, the bass also passes into the principal first note; all according to the fame laws and rules explained by the canons of the harmonic code. After the above two measures in grave time, the part moves in quicker time, making a kind of intonation in efsfugita, as it is called by the Italians, which in English fignifies flying, paffing fucceflively from one note to another, of the principal fimple combination, afcending by three different transpositions of the combined notes to the highest pitch of the instrument, and after descending in the same manner to the lowest octave where it begun. The above-faid efsfugita, or intonation, passes from the notes of the last measure into the note G sharp of the succeeding measure in adagio, or grave time, which G fharp belonging to E fundamental guide to A as its indicative 3d, confequently the first scale D is transposed into A; and the bass having always kept firm the note D of the first scale, as immoveable fundamental bass, at least instead of passing from its stable fundamental to the fundamental bass note of progression E under its ascending indicative 3d occupied by the part, it continues firm in the fame first note D, confequently in the antecedent measure before the adagio time, the same bass note D, which has been always a stable fundamental note, as mentioned, is changed into a common bass in the middle of the fame last measure, in which place it should have passed into the note B as relative guide to E fundamental guide in the next measure under the note G sharp of the part, which G is the indicative 3d, leading into the principal note A; but the note D, in which the bass still continues, becomes the 7th indicative descending note into the 3d of the principal note A; and the same D in the middle of the antecedent measure becomes the third of the note B relative guide to the fundamental guide E, as before-faid. After a little pause the part begins a melody in common time adagio in the scale of A 3d major, with the fifth note of the scale, in the same time the bass note of D 7th of the fundamental guide E refolves descending in C sharp, which is the major 3d of the principal scale A, as may be feen in example xvii. plate 54. The fame melody is continued in four measures, making at their ends the perfect cadence in the fame scale A, after which the part repeats the first little introduction in grave time transposed in the scale of the note A 3d sharp, to which follows in the fame fcale the fame first intonation in flying time, after which the fame antecedent melody, but transposed in the scale E, and after the fourth measure, in which it makes the cadence in E, continues with its progression through the different fcales of A and G, and at last the melody, accompanied by the bass, makes the last cadence in D, the first chosen scale.

In the above example is only transcribed the first grave, first *allegro*, and the following first *adagio*, to which is added the fundamental bass and its proper notes of the fundamental combination in their reversion.

The fecond grave *allegro* and *adagio* following in the beginning of the faid fonata, is omitted, being only a transposition of the first grave *allegro* and *adagio*, the explanation of which may be applied to the rest omitted; which explanation, joined with the other examples explained by the antecedent articles, feem more than enough to distinguish easily and clearly all forts of inversions that may be done by fyncopes, diminutions, and other forts of motions different from the fundamental, by the parts and bassies in figurative music, with their proper relation to the fundamental harmony.

80

Aa

## CHAP. II.

# ARTICLE I. Of Compositions in divers Parts.

HE figured mulic may be composed for divers numbers of parts, namely for two, three, four, five, to fixteen or more real parts. The compositions in two parts, when only one part with a fimple bafs, as a cantata or fong for the voice, is called a cantata or fong a voce fola by the Italians, and for a fimple violin, or flute, or other inftrument with the common bafs, is called alfo a fonata or folo. When the compositions are defigned for two voices, or two instruments accompanied with a fimple bass, they are called two, or duetti, by the same Italians; but when the bass is concerted with the two fuperior parts, with the addition of another common bass for the organ, or for the harpficord, are named *terzetti* in *Italian*, and *trio* by the *French*: The fame of the quatuor, where four concerting parts with a bass continues. The instrumental compositions never pass the number of four, or at most five parts real. It may be observed, that in many compositions for many different inftruments, as seven, eight, and sometimes for twenty or more parts, they are not all real parts, but the fame principal notes of four or five real parts diffributed in the others in fimple or different manners of diminutions, confequently cannot be called real parts, which fignifies that all are diverfly concerned, not only in the harmony, but also in the melody. The vocal compositions pass much over the inftrumental, going from eight to fixteen, and more real parts; these fort of compositions for eight or fixteen parts, ferve only for church mufic, on occasion of fome great folemnity, which are performed by a great quantity of voices, joined alfo with inftruments, or without. These great compositions are ordinarily divided into two or four choruses, disposed in a manner, that fometimes one anfwers to another, and are not always in fixteen real parts, but divided in particular compositions for two, three, or four voices, as in a particular concert; and fome little choruffes are fometimes mixed, formed by ten or more voices, which are ordinarily fopranos or contraltos finging all together a melody at the unifons, with only an organ playing with tafto folo the fame melody, or with only keeping firm continually the principal note of the guide, or of the first note of the scale for to keep the voices in tune; which makes a very pleafant effect when it is done in a proper place, as betwixt two choruffes in full harmony. But when all the choruffes are united, as in the beginning, and at the end of the composition, the full combination in eight or fixteen parts may be introduced in its proper place. The greatest difficulty in these kinds of compositions, is not only in disposing the parts in their best and proper places, but also in the disposition of the different and particular concertos of voices; not only respectively as to the convenience of the words, but also in the repartition of the above divers concertos of voices, in a manner, that being intermixed with the full chorus, one concerto of two, three, or more voices, relieves its following concerto or chorus. In regard to the difpolition of parts, care must be taken when the chorus proceeds in full harmony, of putting the third simple combination in the middle of the full combination. And it must be remembered that the full harmony is composed with all the notes of the harmonic fystem, which notes are the three different combinations joined together, belonging to the guides of their different fcales, namely the first harmony of the fame guide, which is compounded with 3d, 5th, and 7th, to which follows in the fecond place the fimple harmony of its 7th, which is the fourth note of its principal scale, and confequently its sub-principal relative; after which follows the third harmony, which is that belonging to the octave of the principal note of the fcale, ending in the double octave of the fundamental guide. This third and last fimple harmony, which makes the full harmony, is that which must be distributed into the middle parts of the full combinations; particularly the third of the fame last harmony, which is the thirteenth in the full combination, being too much fenfible when it is a major 3d, and confequently makes confusion in all the combination; for that reason the same 3d must be

be in the middle, but the best way is only to use it in some cases of necessity. The octave and the fifth, or twelfth, of the faid third combination, may be used fometimes in the extreme high part of the combination, particularly to give fome ftrong expression to the words when there is occasion; but ordinarily in the high extreme must be placed one of the two ascending or descending indicative notes, which are, as has been explained, the 3d and 7th of the guide; or in the artificial scale instead of the 7th, the 9th, which is properly the indicative descending note of the artificial scale : by this difpolition, the principal parts being also doubled and tripled, the progression into the different fcales is fenfibly and clearly diffinguished without confusion. In these greatest compositions may be used all forts of falfes by supposition, by change, and sometimes by anticipation, but these very feldom, and only in the final cadences, as has been explained in the canons; alfo may be used all uncommon refolutions ascending, together with the common in descending, but in the manner explained in the fame canons. But in compositions of only eight parts, when they are in full combination, the uncommon falfes and refolutions afcending, must not be used fo freely as in fixteen or more parts, because ordinarily the parts are not doubled enough, as in more parts, by which the notes, not only doubled, but tripled and quatripled, strengthen the principal founds of the compound combination; otherwife a composition in five real parts will have a better effect. But when all the fixteen parts are doubled and tripled, and all well disposed in their proper places, with a progression gradually ascending, and fucceffively defcending, make a wonderful impreffion, not fo eafily perceived by those who never heard thefe fort of performances.

In the compositions in two, three, and four parts, the obligation of following the principal harmonic laws is very precife; and particularly in two or three parts, which compositions being formed only by two or three founds, must be chosen from the rest of the full combination the properest for the best harmony. In two parts, viz. for one voice or instrument, with a single bass ferving meerly for compliment, it is very easy to be done, but when the bass must follow the part with good taste, intermixed with some proper melody by imitation or contrast, to the melody of the part helping them, and without the least consult of it is not so easy. The same is in three parts, when the bass under the two parts proceed only for a simple compliment, in which manner may be called a duetto or two, which is easier than when the bass is obliged to answer to the melody of the two parts, in which case are properly called trio or terzetti, with another bass for the clavicord or organ, in simple compliment of the harmony, or without the fame. In like manner may be confidered the quatuor, as before explained.

In compositions for two or three parts, are absolutely forbidden two perfect fifths or two octaves following one another, for the reason of being simple consonant, and not harmonic, as mentioned and explained in the first canon of the harmonic code, IId book; and, in two parts, not only rigourously are forbidden the two fifths or two octaves explicit, but also implicit; consequently when the part proceeds not by thirds or fixths, or by the falses, as fecond and feventh, it must always proceed by contrary motion, and this proceeding is a general rule. In compositions in three parts, must be combined always the fundamental third, in whatfoever denomination it may be, as a 2d, 4th, or 6th sharp or flat, in all the combinations when it is possible, and more proper for the harmony. In compositions for four parts, are permitted two fifths or octaves, but only in contrary motion, because two other parts may supply the first original harmony.

*N. B.* It must be observed, that in compositions of simple and compound combination, the third of the scale when it is sharp is better in the middle of the accord than in the extreme acute; confequently the seventh, when it resolves into the starp 3d, must also be covered with some other sound of the same accord, and not be in the acute part, in which manner the resolution into the sharp third, becomes in the middle of the following combination: on the contrary, when the scale has its 3d flat, this shart 3d is best in the high extreme, and confequently the fundamental 7th of the guide must also be in the extreme high part. The above rule in regard to the scale of the sharp third, is diametrically opposite to that, which has

has been mentioned in regard to full harmony: the reafon is, that the full harmony being composed of all the three principal harmonies of the fcale, as in the fcale of C, are G, F, C, must neceffarily have their indicative notes into the highest place of the combination for to diftinguish their fundamental and principal harmony, otherways they may be confounded. But the fimple and compound harmony cannot be confounded by the above three harmonies, one of which is excluded, and the acute found being in the acute part, confequently the more fensibly weakens the other founds of the combination; fo on the contrary, the flat founds, which are in proportion of leffer fensation, are always better in the highest part.

These general observations in the compositions of divers numbers of parts, may be subject to fome exceptions on several occasions, particularly on account of the melody, also for fome particular expressions by the harmony; all which the composer may diffinguish when he has acquired a sufficient practice and knowledge of the compositions.

## ARTICLE II. Of Fugues and Imitations.

HOSE kinds of compositions, in which one part begins a subject of melody, and after fome pause, or refts, another part follows in a like or the fame fubject, is called fugue by muficians: it is diffinguished in real fugue and imitation. The real fugue, as improperly called, is when the part which follows the first repeats the same subject, or near the same proposed by the first part, at the unifon, or fourth, or fifth, or at the octave; but without departing from the founds of the octave proposed by the first subject. The imitation is called when the fubject of melody is repeated by the following part in whatfover note of the octave, at the pleafure of the composer, as in the 2d, 3d, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, and octave, without being obliged to keep the fame repeat or answer in the fame octave. The real fugues are generally used in church-music; but very improperly used, and very improperly named; because the faid repeat or answer being obliged to be done in the limits of the proposed octave, cannot be always like the proposed subject, but it must be altered in some notes for fake of the mode, as it is called by muficians, which we call fcale, or octave, in which has been proposed the subject by the first part. On the cantrary, the imitation gives always the answer very like the proposed subject, being not constrained to the same mode, or octave; confequently the imitations are in better right to be called real fugues, or real imitations : but because Guido Aretino in harmonizing the Cantus Gregorian applied to the fervice of the church, which are divided in eight different modes, has followed the Greek manner of finging those cantus without forting from their different modes or octaves; fo the fucceflive chorifters, and choir-mafters of those first times, being better acquainted with the Greek modes than with the different harmonic combinations, and knowing only the most fimple harmony introduced by Guido; confequently they, with all fucceffive mulicians to this prefent time, have fuppofed and do fuppofe, that the fugues in the precife compafs of the octave called modes, be the very proper fugues calling them reals; and the imitations, because fometimes change the octave, passing into the following octave of the fifth ascending or descending, are confidered as improper and irregular : but now, that the harmony is arrived to its perfection, and the fame melody is come out of its old bondage, and also arrived to its perfection, being totally changed, and the old manner only conferved and practifed in the common fervices of the church, feem very convenient that the old terms and names, when improperly applied to the prefent mufic, may be juftly changed. The above-faid fugues and imitations are also very improper for the church, but of that more will be spoken in the article of the church-music. These sugges, or imitations, which feem as a mufical pedantry, notwithstanding they may be used with taste and judgment, and properly varied; which very feldom happens, are ordinarily, and not properly fit for the general pleafure of the public : But the fludy and practifing them are the beft and neceffary means for acquiring a perfect knowledge of all forts of combinations and progreffions of harmony, which renders very eafy the composing in mulic: therefore, a student in the harmonic art must never neglect practifing the composition of all forts of fugues,

Chap. II.

fugues, not only in the limitted manner of those called real fugues, but also in all forts of imitations, not for the public pleasure, but for his own study. In this manner he will be capable of composing and adapting the harmony to all forts of melody as he pleases, in the manner which is called by the *Italians* fugato, or by imitation and by reversion, or adding together different melodies, without the oftentation of continuing the same subject in a real fugue or imitation, fometimes more than an hundred measures in a dry fugue or imitation, only by rambling from one scale or octave to another; and often with a bad melody and harmony.

# ARTICLE III. Of the Manner of composing Fugues and Imitations.

THE art of composing fugues and imitations, is not generally to hard as it is supposed; what may be a little hard for those particularly who are not furnished with a good taste, is for a prompt invention of a good melody, which must be for the best compassed in lesser measures, as is possible. If the chosen subject may be divided in two parts, it will be of good use in the continuation of the composition in shortening them, by which the answer of the fecond part coming fooner makes the greater variety. When the fubject of melody is chosen, it must be observed if the answer becomes proper, particularly if the fugue is what is called real, as above-mentioned; (it must be remembered that the principal notes of the octave are two, namely the first note which is the principal of the scale, and the fifth note which is its guide) if the fubject is between the principal note and its guide, the anfwer which follows must be betwixt the guide and the octave of the principal. For example, supposing the natural scale C, the subject beginning in C passes to D, the answer is G to A; if the beginning is D passing to E, the answer is A to B; also beginning in E to F, the answer is B to C: but when the notes of the subject proceed by skips, the response is somewhat different; for inftance, if the fubject paffes directly from C to G, fkipping a fifth higher or a fourth lower, the responce is G to C, skipping a fourth higher or a fifth lower; because the note C is the extreme acute of the principal C its octave below, which in the above fugue real is forbid the paffing over; but in the imitation the refponce is from G to D, and the subject skipping from D, or from E to C, must repeat A C, or B C, if the fubject descends from C to B returning to C, the answer descends from G to F, and from F to E, because F being distant a full tone, which is the perfect fourth of the principal, becomes the flat feventh of the guide G, the fame feventh being the indicative defcending note of the fcale, confequently must be naturally refolved into E, which is the third of the principal C; but by imitation the just responce may be done by G to F sharp returning in G, which cannot be done in real fugue, the fame F sharp being not comprized in the scale of This thort diffinction feems enough for the knowledge of the difference betwixt the **C**. fugues called real, and the fimple imitations; being the enumeration of the divers proceeding of the various fubjects of melody of too large a description, and of very little usefulness to the modern practice of the best compositions of music. Now, returning to the composition of fugues, when the fubject is chosen to which the answers become just, the fame answer must be introduced in the last note of the proposed subject, if that is possible, or nearer the last note; and the answer being introduced, the first part must proceed upon the same answer, with some different melody, which may correspond to the proper harmony; after which, the refponce being compleat, if there follows more, of two or three parts, the preceeding parts must go on still with some different melody upon the responces of all the following parts, which melody must have fome little connexion to the first subject; or, instead of fimple melody, may be introduced what is called a contra subject, upon or near upon the fame proposed subject; and, after all the parts have done, and passed every one the fubject and its contra fubject, they must all together make a cadence; which ordinarily is in the scale of the fifth note high of the first proposed scale, being its nearer fcale in the progression of harmony, and the same cadence may be of terminate or indeterminate harmony at the pleafure of the compofer.

If

Book III.

If the fame cadence is of terminate harmony, ordinarily the first subject is repeated, in the middle of which, if it is possible, must follow the contra subject; or, when there is a contra subject, it may be proposed first, and for its answer the first subject; but if the answer cannot be introduced in the middle of the same subject, or contra subject, the subject may be shortened to introduce the answer sooner than it was done in the beginning of the fugue, or imitation. But the proceeding in these fugues and imitations, being made in almost infinite manners at the pleasure of the composer, and the description of these different manners being not possible to be done in a small compass, as before-faid, confequently an example to be explained will be the fhorter way, and more profitable for knowing the. proceeding of the above fugues or imitations: for this purpole we have chosen the first fugue, in the first allegro of the first fonata, a violino folo, opera 5th, of *Corelli*, the beginning of which fonata was explained in the ninth article of the antecedent chapter. The above fugue is composed in the scale of D, with its third sharp: the first note begins in the unaccented time of the measure, ascending gradually from the third note of the scale to the fifth note, from which it descends a fifth, which is the note D octave of the principal D of the fcale; in which manner making a bass cadence, the above note D is properly the end of the fubject; but, for the fake of introducing the answer of the fecond part, the above fubject is augmented with another different fubject, which ferves as an half part of the total fubject, and also as a melody for uniting a contra fubject, which forms the end of the intire fubject proposed, and the above contra fubject lines the response of the fecond part, which is done in repeating the proposed subject in the fourth note below, which is C sharp, third note to A guide to the chosen scale D, after the same second part has repeated the first, and the fecond part of the subject, has been added some notes in half a measure for returning in the accord of the principal note D, passing into the third part of the subject, which makes the contra subject, giving at the same time the opportunity of introducing the third answer performed by the bass, as a third part, beginning the fame answer in the last unaccented time of the fourth measure, continuing as was done by the first part, at the end of which he makes a perfect cadence in D, repeating after the contra subject done by the second part; but, instead of keeping the harmony in D, as was done by the fame fecond part, he paffes B as guide to the following note E, which, as principal guide transposes the harmony in A, having the superior part in the middle accord as it were a fourth part, repeats the fubject in the accord of the above relative guide B, paffing immediately into the principal guide E, making the cadence in A, with only the first part of the fubject; and, with the fecond part of the fame fubject, continues in the fame accord of A, not as principal, but as guide to D, in which they fall with the end of the fame fecond part of the fubject, after which immediately follows as before a fifth part, which repeat all the fubject, as has been done in the beginning by the first part, but in the lower octave; and the bass, under the second part of the subject, makes the contra subject, joining with the fame the beginning of the above fubject in the accord of the guide A, as being a fixth part; and at the end of the fecond part of the fubject, and under the third part of the fame, the bass, as being a seventh part, repeats another time the subject in the accord of the principal note D, making the cadence in A, as guide to the fame principal, with the first part of the fubject continuing with the fecond part of the fame; at the end of which is repeated the fame fubject in the accord of D, by the fame bafs, but at the lower octave, as being done by an eighth part performed by a fuppoling contra bals or organ, the fubject being difposed in the above manner as it were in eight parts, terminating with the cadence in the principal note of the chosen scale D. (See the same sugue described in example xviii. plates 55, 56, 57, and 58.) After the above cadence in D principal, the first part begins another different fubject, which indeed is the fame as the first, but with diminished notes, which is followed by a fecond part, and fucceffively by the bafs; after which is an interval of melody in imitation of the first contra subject, continuing in the same imitation for two measures and a half, after the repetition of the above diminished subject in the accord of the guide A, accompanied by the first part with the contra subject, which makes the third part of the first chosen subject, after which the same part immediately answers to the diminished subject of the bass, in the octave of the same accord of the guide; and directly

94

directly the fecond part anfwers to the fame diminished subject, but in the accord of the principal note D at the lower octave, to which follows, as being two and three parts joined together into the violino, giving the accord to the bafs, which moves by fkips, of guide and cadence, but diminished with cromas or quavers, all together making a perfect cadence in B; after which follows an arpegio, by three fuperior parts joined into the violino, the bass continuing with its diminished skips of cadence, or of guide, for above nine measures, at last making the cadence in D; but the violino continuing the arpegio, the bass accompanying it, but with fimple notes, 'till the fame cadence in D is repeated; after which the bass repeats the first beginning of the subject, to which is answered by the same bass as a tenor, but the violino begins a melody, as being divided in two parts; the first propofes a fubject in the accented time of the measure, and the fecond gives the answer into the fecond quarter not accented of the fame measure, continuing in this manner for four measures, after the two parts change the melody in a kind of arpegio performed by distinct fkips, which also may be supposed, divided in two parts, the first part in the first division and the fecond part into the fecond division, making at last the cadence in A, and immediately, as a fimple part, the violino propofes the beginning of the fubject in the lower part of the octave of the chord A, which, instead of being answered, another upper part proposes three simple notes of the fame subject diminished, to which directly is answered by a fuppofed other fuperior part with the fame three notes, but transposed into the chord of D, to which the bass instantly follows with the same intire subject diminished, in the chord of D paffing in G, and after in A as principal of indeterminate harmony, from which it is changed by its relative guide E, into the guide A fundamental and stable, as a pedal in the organ, keeping firm under the parts in the fiddle, which gradually paffes in arpegio the notes of the accord of the principal D, to that of the guide A, in compound harmony, from which the first part passes with an esfugita, as it is called in Italian, into the fimple accord of the guide, making at last the terminate final cadence, (fee the above fugue in the mentioned example xviii.) The fundamental bass has been added in the beginning in two different manners to the common bass of the above fugue, not only for to fhew directly the progression, and the construction of the same, but also for a more abundant instruction of the different relations between the combinations of founds, and its progreffion in figured and in fundamental harmony; thewing the relation of all the fyncopes, diminutions of notes, and skips passing from one part to another in the figured harmony. In regard to the composition of the fame fugue, it is evident, that not only the very fame fubject, but also the progression, or (as commonly called) the modulation, is of a very dry nature; the melody of the fubject being very indifferent, and its progreffion being repeated above eight times fucceffively, continuing always only in the two principal chords of its octave, furely it cannot be fuppofed that the fame progreffion be too much varied, and only properly fit for church-mufic, but not for what is called mufic of camera, or other public and private diversion. But, confidering the undertaking of putting two or more parts joined into the compass of one fiddle, and the variety which has been used in the management of the fame fubject, in repeating them fometimes in the octave high and low, and fometimes all the fubject, and fometimes only one part of the fame; all that made not only excufable, but laudable, and prettily pleafant the above composition; in the middle of which has been alfo intermixed fome different melody, and fome harmony with arpegio, all very proper to the principal fubject.

From what has been faid, the fludent of the harmonic art may know the conftruction and continuation of fugues. It must be observed, that when the subject of a sugue, or imitation, is chosen, and followed by its proper answer, if the student will put under the same subject and answer its fundamental bass, with all the combinations simple, compound, or full, which can be afforded by the bass, in observing all the different accords, and in diminishing their principal notes in divers manners, he will certainly find fome melody which may ferve as a contra subject proper to be intermixed with the composition, or follow the fame first subject, as we have seen in the above explained fugue of *Corelli*, in which the contra subject follows directly the subject, and the same contra subject may be under the same subject, being composed composed in its fundamental accord, must also be observed the manner with which has been diminished the same first subject producing a different subject, and may be also observed the last allegro of the same fonata, which is composed by the same subject in fugue, only differently diminished, and put in the proper order respectively to the difference of the measure, which in the last above fugue is in triple time. And for a fure practise of the management of the fugues and imitations, it must observe not only one, but many of the best authors compositions, examining attentively their manner of proceeding in their subjects, contra subjects, combinations, and progressions, in fugues and imitations, and their divers melodies introduced betwixt them, particularly in what is called fugue real, as the answers to the subjects of the same subject of the management of all forts of fugues and imitations, the student in the harmonic art will in time find very eafy all forts of compositions harmonic.

N.B. It must be observed that the fundamental bass may be put in divers manners, under and to the fame fimple melody, with its proper and different accords, by which the progression or modulation is changed, as may be seen in example xix. plate 59. in which the natural scale is expressed in ascending and descending with different fundamental bass; it must also be observed, that the fundamental bass proceeding with the auxiliar perfect skip, joined with the perfect contonant skip of cadence (as it is expressed in the third bass of the fame example xix.) is not the proper progression for only two parts, because with the fame progreffion the combination is formed by unifons or octaves in the accented time, and divided only by the third in the time not accented (as it is between the bass and the notes of the afcending fcale) without the third in the accented time, and always without the fifth, the harmony becomes empty in the accented time, which is the best and most fensible in the progreffion : but, in three and four parts, as it is in the faid above example, in which in three parts always the third fubfifts in the accented time, and the fifth in the unaccented, and better in four parts, where the combination is complete, confequently the fame proceeding of the above third bafs may be used at pleasure. The proceeding also with the skip of cadence, as it is done by the fourth fundamental bass under the same natural scale descending, expressed in the above example xix. plate 59. is improper under the fimple notes of the defcending scale, being the combination only by fifth and octave, without third, and confequently unharmonic, but when it is joined with all fimple accord, may also be used freely.

## ARTICLE IV. Of Ganons.

ANONS may be called perpetual fugues, or imitations, because they are composed upon CANONS may be called perpetual lugace, or initiations, which fubject a fimple fubject of melody, without being mixed with any other melody, which fubject being introduced and terminated by a first part, the second part follows immediately with the fame melody, and the first continues in the fame time another melody, which may be proper to the fame first melody, and the fecond part continues the fame in its progressions: if the canon is performed by many other parts, all proceed in the fame manner, confequently the melody or fubject being introduced by the parts, one after another, all the parts cannot but end together all the subject. The composition of these canons confift in chufing a melodious fubject, at the end of which must be introduced the fame fubject by a fecond part, with the fame notes at the unifons, or transposed in whatsoever founds of the chosen octave, as at the fecond, third, fourth, &c. at the pleasure of the composer; upon the notes of this second part must be continued, by the first part, a proper melody forming the continuation of the proposed subject, which melody is after repeated by the fecond part; under which, if another following part is introduced another time, the first beginning proposed by the first part, to which the same third part follows always the first and second part in the same proceeding with their melody; and the first part composing always a new proper melody upon the under part till at the end of the fong or tune, after

Chap. II.

after which the fame first part immediately begins another time the proposed tune cr fong at the time that the other part continues its respective tune or long till finished, at the end of which it begins the fame again. For to find out the proper harmonic melody to the following notes of every one of the parts, the fame beginning of the tune proposed must be united with all the compound, or full harmony, which can be supported by the beginning of the fame tune or fong proposed; and from this composition and reversion, will be found out all the changes that may be done in the proposed subject. It has been mentioned that fugues and imitations are only proper for inftrumental, and not for vocal mufic, as will be clearly fhewn by the reafon that will be produced in the article of vocal mufic. On the contrary, the canons are only proper for a fimple diversion in vocal mufic, and not for inftrumental; these canons being ordinarily extremely dry, confequently they cannot afford great pleafure to the fenfation; but in the vocal, the fame words, which ordinarily are comic, fupply the dry progression of the canons. The canons only in two parts are more eafy and pleafant, because they may be composed with some varied progression, as it is to be seen in example xxi. plate 61. but in four parts are always dry and the words confounded. The example xx. plate 60. is in four parts at the unifon in the fcale of D natural third, divided in time alla breve, as called by mulicians. The first part begins a melody in the first measure, and the second part answers the same melody at the unifons in its first measure, which is the second measure of the first part: The third part also in its first measure (which is the third measure of the first, and the second of the fecond part) repeats the antecedent melody proposed by the first part in the beginning, following after the fame melody at the unifons, as it has done in the fecond part : The fourth part follows in the fame manner as the other antecedent parts has done, following fucceffively the fame melody proposed by the first part, and every one terminating their melody before every one of the fucceffive following parts; every one repeats immediately the fame melody one after another, as they have begun, continuing repeating the fame at pleafure, putting at last the end, as it is marked in the fame example xxi. plate 61. In this example it must be observed, that the melody of the canon has no other progression but only succeffively passing from the notes of the accord of the principal note of the scale D to those of its fundamental guide A, every first half part of all the measures belonging to the accord of the principal, and the other fecond part to the notes of the guide; the fundamental bafs. paffing in every measure from the principal to the same guide. That has been done expressly for an eafy and clear explanation of that, which must always be observed in continuing the composition of the melody with its proper reference to the following parts, and to the fundamental bafs; and by this obfervation is known how many changes may be fupported by every note of whatfoever proposed combination, as it is apparent in the same canon. It must also be observed, that a canon in four parts at the unifon, the progression cannot be altered till past the last measure, in which the last part puts an end to its melody, but after all the parts have terminated their melody or fong, the progression may be changed, and continued in another scale with a different melody, which may properly be united with the beginning of the first melody; but that brings the canon very long and improper for a composition, which ferves only as a tune, or fong by memory, for a fimple diversion in a garden, room, or street.

Cc

17

ARTICLE

## ARTICLE V. Of Cadences.

IN the first book, chapter iv. articles i. and ii. it has been explained, that all progressions in music must be done by the harmonic combination of the foundability in music must be done by the harmonic combination of the founds belonging to the first ' principal notes of the scales, and to their fifth notes, which are the fundamental guides of the fame principal notes. To thefe two principal notes have been added two other notes, which ferve both as auxiliar to the two other above-mentioned, and these added notes are two thirds, one below, the other above their first principal notes. From the motions of these above four notes, the two principal, and the two auxiliar, which are the places of the fundamental bass, all progressions in music are made by continuall cadences, as it is clearly apparent by all the canons of the harmonic code; therefore the composition of music may be defined an harmonic progression of divers cadences, viz. simple, compound, and broken, and are diftinguished in different manners; first, in perfect and imperfect; the perfect cadences are the product of the perfect confonant skip of a fifth low; and the imperfect cadences are produced from the other confonant imperfect fkip of fifth high. Secondly, in terminate and indeterminate harmony: The two above perfect and imperfect fkips, may be both of terminate and indeterminate harmony. The cadences arising from the two auxiliar skips are all of indeterminate harmony. The terminate harmony composes the final and middle cadences. The final cadences are those which put an end to the compofition, and the middle those which terminate some particular periods in the course of the composition. The final cadences must be done in the principal note of the scale, in which was begun the composition, accompanied only by the more fimple accord, namely in two and three parts, with only the unifon or octave; in four parts the unifon, fifth and octave; in five parts may be added the third; and in fix or more parts may be doubled the fifth and octave, preferable to the third, particularly if it is major, being by its own nature more fenfible than the two confonants, as before-mentioned. The manner of doubling the two confonant notes has been shewn by the third canon of the harmonic code. In the number of the final cadences is one, which is imperfect, and it is particularly used in church music for diffinction of the old eight Greek modes in authentic and plagal, as has been explained in the introduction. This imperfect final cadence, inftead of defcending from the fundamental guide, descends from the fourth note to the principal; but this final cadence, which is done ordinarily immediately after the perfect cadence, must be in a very flow manner, by which is fhewn that it is a final cadence. The middle cadences are the fame as the final, and may be done in three and four parts, with the addition of the third, when it may ferve for the progress of the harmony. Sometimes these middle cadences may be imperfect, deriving from the confonant imperfect skip of a fifth high, and are called fuspended cadences, because they stop at the fundamental guide, without descending into the principal note of the octave. These fort of suspended cadences are used and applied to fome particular expressions, as points of interrogations, admirations, or exclamations, and more frequently in the recitative manner; which fort of cadences being of terminate harmony, must also be done with fimple combination, which is with the major third, perfect fifth, and octave. All other cadences, perfect and imperfect, which are compounded with the 7th, 9th, or other fuperior thirds, are all of indeterminate harmony, which supposes the continuation of the harmony for the resolutions of the superior thirds, called difcords by muficians, as has been mentioned in the above chapter iv. article i. By these diverse cadences is done all forts of fundamental progressions, as before-mentioned; but is not fo clearly perceived in figurate mufic as it is by the fundamental, because the parts and the bass moving in different manners, inverts the original fundamental combination, as it is explained in the first chapter of this prefent book, and by this means breaks alfo the order of the fundamental cadences, in which order of the fame fundamental cadences the common bass must be at last united; but it happens sooner or later, according to the pleasure of the composer: Therefore all inverted cadences may be called broken cadences; between these broken cadences is one which apparently differs from the others, and is broken by the
Chap. II.

the motion of the bafs, when is formed the combination fimple or compound, upon one of the fundamental guides of whatfoever fcale; which guide, inftead of paffing into the principal note of its octave a fifth low, or a fourth high, paffes immediately to the next fucceffive acute note, breaking in this manner the true cadence; which kind of cadences may be called deceptive cadences, derived from the fuppofed motions of the auxiliar fkip of third low. As for example, the bafs being in G, which, fuppofing the natural fcale of C is its fundamental guide, and inftead of paffing and making the cadence in its principal note C, paffes, afcending a note to A, as a relative fcale; but as a fundamental bafs cannot proceed by joint degree, mult fuppofe that the latter end of the bafs note G is changed into a common bafs, as being in the third note of the relative guide E to A, and the fundamental bafs as defcended from G to the fame relative guide E for paffing to A, with the proper and juft fkip of cadence.

These deceiving cadences are like the broken cadences, which derive all from the gradual motion of the common bafs, all depending from the auxiliar fkips; only the ordinary broken cadences pass successively from one note to another, without keeping the antecedent note in one accented time as it is done by the guide : But the descending perfect cadences keep the antecedent note, as properly a fundamental guide divided in two, the one accented, the other not accented, paffing after into the next note, which also is in accented time. See the examples i. ii. iii. iv. and v. plate 62. by which are delineated and expressed all the above forts of cadences. For composing the same cadences, the final cadences must have the guide in two times, one accented the other unaccented, as abovementioned, particularly in grave or adagio time, the accented part may be in compound harmony, and in the other following unaccented part it must for the better being refolved the compound into the fimple harmony, paffing after into the fimple note, as it is expressed in the first example, plate 62. The middle cadences may be fometimes done in a manner which may be called a flying cadence (as those which may be seen in the second example of plate 62.) but very feldom, particularly in vocal music, because when the cadence is at the end of a terminate period, this cadence must be regularly and fensibly done, observing the expression of the fong and the value of fyllables. The broken cadences properly are made by all the notes which compose the harmony, when those notes instead of passing with their following notes into their proper fundamental places, fyncopes the first note, or passes into those of a different scale, relative, or principal may be, as may be seen in the third example of the above plate. The fourth example fnews the deceptive cadences, and the fifth the other cadences, called fuspended, as above explained.

# ARTICLE VI. Of Accents.

MUSIC has its proper accents as well as difcourfe. The accent in fpeaking, may be diftinguifhed into three principal fignifications; one in regard to the fenfe of the words and periods, the other to the pronunciation of fyllables; and the laft to the diffinction of the periods. The first is performed by the flexibility of the voice, in changing the founds a little from the grave to the acute, or vice versa, according to the diverse sense of the words and periods, and conformable to the cuftom of the diverse particular languages; and this flexibility of the voice, being diverse, and in almost every language, cannot be expressed in writing. The fecond fignification regarding the pronunciation of the fyllables in fhort or long, as every one knows the language of his own country by common habitude, confequently only fome equivocal fyllables are marked in writing by fome accent, which are called acute, grave, and circumflex. The third fignification, which regards the division and distinction of periods, must necessarily be expressed in writing by some points, columns, commas, and points, by which the different little refts, which in speaking must be used between the different pe-Befides these figns referring to the distinction of periods, riods, are perfectly known. fome others are used, which not only ferve to the fame distinction of periods, but to distinguish their particular sense, and they are called points of interrogation, admiration, and exclamation,

exclamation, by which, in fpeaking, the flexion of the voice is appropriated to their particular fense, in a little different manner from that which commonly ferves to the sense of the other periods. The fame may be confidered in mufic; but in a manner fome-what diverfe, but more just and perfect. All the above different fignifications are diffinctly and properly indicated by the divers notes, and other different figns, which notes and figns are all delineated in the plates 4 and 5, explained at the end of the introduction; to which notes and figns the flexibility of the voice, the pronunciation of fyllables, and the different distinction of periods, must exactly be conformed. The notes, with their value in the meafure of time, are all expressed in plate 4, and described in ten figures. The first figure has the longest in time, and the tenth, which is the last, shews the shortest. To every one of the fame notes, immediately follows the number of measures, or parts of the measure, which fhews the value of the fame notes, and under them the different figns, which indicates their respective refts. The ascending, and descending of the above notes, as it is expressed in the examples iii. iv. and v. plate 5. denotes the diverse flexibility of the voice, done in its proper time, which time is denoted at the beginning of the composition with its proper figns, as are expressed by the first and second figures, plate 5. and in regard of explaining the notes, as allegro, grave, or adagio, the fame fense of the words gives the direction of it; but the inftrumental mufic being deprived of words, the terms adagio, grave, and prefto, which belongs to the measure of the time, and the others which relates to the expression, as affetuoso, allegro, or vivace, andante, sciolto, or legato, must be always noted at the beginning of the composition under the fign of time. In regard to the pronunciation of the fyllables, long, or breve, the fame notes which divides the meafure of time, must be put in one proper order, by which the pronunciation may be done in a proper and eafy manner for expressing the long and breve, and at last, for expression of the distinction and divisions of periods, are the diverse fort of cadences, as are explained by the antecedent article; or, inftead of them, the divers refts as are noted under every note defcribed in the above plate 4. which indicates the paufes, or refts, which must be betwixt one period to another. We have feen in its proper place, that time in mulic, and their respective measures, may be divided in equal and unequal parts. The time alla breve, a capella, or common time, and their other derivations, as  $\frac{2}{4}$ ,  $\frac{4}{5}$ ,  $\mathcal{C}c$ . are all divided in measures, which may be fub-divided by equal parts; on the contrary, the measures of triple time are divided by unequal parts. The measures which may be divided in two equal parts, have their first part accented, and the fecond part unaccented; when the fame measures are divided in four parts, by four equal notes, the first note and the third are accented, and the fecond and fourth not accented, as it is diffinguished in example vii. plate 62. but when the fecond note, which is unaccented, being empirication in two notes, the first of the two becomes accented, the fecond unaccented; and the first part of the measure being divided by four' equal notes, the first and the third are accented, the second and fourth notes not accented, as it is expressed in the above plate 62. example viii. where every note is marked with their particular fign long, or breve, expressed thus (- long, o breve) and the general rule is this, that all notes of whatfoever but like value, joined together, the first is the accented, and the fecond unaccented, computing in the fame manner the following notes, fo far as they continue composed by the fame value; but the principal accents are always two, the first is in the first note of the measure, which may be confidered as the very first principal, and the fecond accent which also may be confidered at the fecond principal, is in the first note of the fecond part of the fame measure. In triple time the accent falls fomewhat different into the notes of their relative measures. In the times divided by the figns of equality before fpoken, being the accent principally confidered in the first note of the measure, and also in the first note of the second part of the same measure; consequently all the middle and final cadences may be alternately in both of the fame two principal accents, but in time of triples, the first accent, when the measure is divided by three equal notes, is in the first note, and the second accent is the last; the middle note being consequently unaccented, as it is expressed in example ix. of the above plate 62. The middle, and particularly the final perfect cadences must have their last and final notes in the first accent of the next measure; and this is a general rule which has an exception when the tune or air is Chap. II.

is composed for the dance; in which, beginning the tune by the first note of the measure, confequently the last cadence being obliged to pass immediately to the same beginning of the tune, is also obliged to have the last cadence in the second accent of the measure for repeating immediately the tune; and in this cafe, the above general rule is facrificed to the dance, as has been formerly and commonly done, and it is to be feen in fome triples of Corelli's operas : But in rigour of mufical accent, it is always abufively done. In the fame triple time, the fecond accent-is not enough for a perfect cadence, and at least must be employed the fecond note of the measure joined with the third note of the measure following the laft note of the cadence in the first accented note of the next measure; and for final cadence, the best is when all the three notes of the measure are occupied by the fundamental The perfect cadences are the more pleafant after an harmonic progression, which is guide. done (as has been feen in the antecedent article) by a continuation of broken, flying, and other divers cadences, confequently in all forts of time they must be done in a very fensible and melodious manner. In vocal mufic, its accent muft be conformed and joined to that of the words; but in inftrumental mufic, being deprived of words, the accent is eafily miftaken and mifplaced, particularly by the composers who has had no better master than his own genius, or practice of the harpficord. It has been repeated that mufick is composed by way of diverse forts of cadences. These divers forts of cadences are to be confidered in some gradual order. The principal cadences, the perfect and imperfect, confonant and fundamental cadences must be placed in the first order; to which may be added the fuspended cadences, and the deceptive, or false cadences; the flying cadences may follow as second in the fame order, after may be continued the fame order for the divers broken cadences, giving always the preference to the bass note, which is nearer the fundamental, as it is the third note following the fifth, the feventh, and the other fuperior thirds, by which are broken the perfect cadences; and in this manner the accent cannot be misplaced.



Dd

CHAP.

# CHAP. III.

# ARTICLE I. The Division of figured Harmony.

HE figured harmony, or common mufic, may be divided, and diffinctly confidered under three different denominations; namely, vocal, inftrumental, and local. Without voices, or inftruments, harmony cannot fubfift. A written composition of mufic may ferve for the eyes, not for the ears: Confequently the voices and inftruments are the neceffary productions of harmony, bad or good. The vocal mufic may be called natural, becaufe the power of it has been implanted in men by the very fame nature, as mentioned in the beginning of the introduction; and the inftrumental may be diffinguished and called artificial, being invented by art. The local mufic comprehends both vocal and inftrumental feparately, or joined together, especially applied to the property, decorum, and tafte belonging to the different places in which the mufic is to be performed, as will diffinctly be fhewn in its proper place.

## ARTICIE II. Of Vocal Music.

W/E have just above mentioned, that the power of finging, cultivating, and performing mufic, has been implanted in men by the very fame nature: But this power was proportioned to the particular conftitution of every one, from whence it happens, that one has a better voice, disposition, taste, and more love to music than another: Notwithstanding every one poffeffes the fame general power of making mufic with his own voice, bad or good. The mufic produced by a good and proper voice for mufic, is infinitely fuperior to all mufic that may be produced by any inftrument whatfoever; becaufe the best inftrument can only produce founds, but a voice may join his mufical founds to the difcourfe; and when it is properly adapted, both together acquiring an extraordinary power, becomes abfolute arbitrator of the human passions, and made wonder and miracles as it is reported by fo many old and modern hiftorians. But this power falls very fhort when mufic is not well, and properly applied to the expression and sense of the words; and notwithstanding that the music may be composed by an excellent artist, but indifferently adapted to the words, may be only confidered as funple inftrumental mufic, fit for pleafure, but not for affecting and moving the human paffions, becaufe the excellence and fuperiority of the vocal mufic confifts only in giving weight to the fpeech, which cannot be done without the excellence of the harmonic art being properly joined to the expression of the words; and this (if we will diffinguish the art) is what may be called the only fcience of mulic: Therefore in this fense mulic may be defined a perfect emphatical expression produced by an excellent combination of founds and words : Confequently to poffefs this fcience of mulic, it is neceffary not only to poffefs perfectly all rules of combinations and progressions harmonic, but all the different impressions which may be done to fenfation by the various motions, combinations, and progreffions gradually, or by fkips; to diffinguish the properest airs which are to be applied to the different fenfes, as pathetic, brifk, or languid, in their proper time, flow, or quick; for example, a fkip of the fifth high, in quick time, is more proper for fome lively expressions, than fkipping a fourth low, which is the fame confonant found at the octave low, which Tkip may better ferve for pathetic and doleful expressions in flow time: And because the vocal mufic is performed by different voices, as Sopranos, Contraltos, tenors and baffes, every one of which have a different propriety; confequently are not of a little advantage, when it is in the power of the composer to make choice of the most proper voice for expressing different compositions of the words. The Sopranos being of the acute voice, are the more proper for the quick movements, and these for the expressions, merry and agreeable. The Contraltos having their voices lefs acute, and of fweet tone, may be imployed in the pathetic

pathetic and amorous stile, and other flow movements. The Tenor partaking of all particularity of the other voices, may ferve in all gay, brifk, grave, and refolute movements, and particularly in fimple narratives which are done under the terme, or moto andante, by the Italians called arie perlanti; which in English fignifies a manner of speaking. The Bass being a more grave voice, is not proper for quick movements, not in the very adagio pathetic, but in the middle of those two extremes, as largo, andante, risoluto, and staccato; the propereft motions of melody for baffes are fkips, also by their gradual divisions, or diminutions of notes. To the tenor voice all motions are proper. To the contraltos it is the fostenuto and firm notes, alfo fome few skips, but not too much distant in accuteness or gravity; on the contrary, the fostenuto, and firm notes, are not proper for the foprano. voice, but the moving and diminished notes are more proper. These may ferve for general rules in distributing the mufic to the voices, which may have fome exceptions on fome occafions. After all that has been faid above, a little knowledge of the art oratoria, or poetica, will certainly be of no little fervice for adapting the propereft founds, fimple or combined, to the various expressions, as narratives, interrogations, exclamations, lamentations, conclusions, and all other forts of declamations. But at last the composer should put himfelf into the fame paffion into which he would move his auditors by his compositions; this may ferve for a general rule to be depended on, becaufe the enumeration of all observations in the divers applications of founds in melody, and combined in harmony to the just expreffion of words, is of fo much extension, and subject to an infinity of distinctions, all which cannot be compassed in a moderate space. But every one may take care of knowing them by practice, and by his own private application.

#### ARTICLE III. Of Instrumental Music.

T HE inftrumental mufic cannot pretend to equal the vocal, to which it is only a copy, and a copy in miniature, without any obligation of obferving the rules mentioned in the antecedent article, belonging to the fame vocal mufic, as derived from the fcience fuppofing the art divifible, all exprefiions being arbitrary to the compofers: Neverthelefs the inftrumental has an honourable prerogative, having been in fome manner the caufe of the perfection of the vocal. With only the voice, and without inftruments, it would have been almost impossible, not only to compose a perfect fcale of mufical founds, but alfo of repeating a like found which fome time before was pronounced; because founds are fimple fensations, produced by the motion of the air, which vanishes away, the fensation alfo ceasing immediately, and the fame fensation cannot be printed in the memory, but we may have the remembrance of having heard a found, which cannot easily be repeated in the fame pitch after fome little time past.

We have feen in the Introduction, that not only the first Greek poets, but also the Roman orator Gracchus, has been obliged to make use of instruments, only to keep the voice in a proper and just tone. Now notwithstanding at this day the performance in music is arrived to its ne plus ultra, it is very difficult to the performers to keep their voice in the fame pitch without inftruments, as has been tried many times by three or four fingers beginning a fong in a , fixed pitch, following finging without inftruments; after the fpace of three or four minutes, in founding the first pitch, they find the voices all fall down into the grave, and that in proportion to the quantity of time they continued finging. But not only the vocal mufic in particular is obliged to the inftruments, but the whole harmonic art, it being evident, that without a perfect fcale of founds, the melody fhould have continued in its imperfect beginning, and the harmony never fhould have been producted; being more than probable. that neither Guido nor others should have been capable of finding out the simple beginning of harmony without the help of the organ, the performance of which has been known not only by the fame Guido, but also by others before him. All that is admirable in the ordinary disposition and oeconomy of providential nature, which has given to men the power of producing and cultivating mulic, and to the fame power has joined fome particular inftincts

inftincts for invening inftruments to imitate the human voice in finging, without thefe inftincts mufic fhould never have ripened to perfection. Now returning to the performance of inftrumental mufic.

The compofer is abfolute mafter of chufing what melody or harmony he pleafes, but always rigoroufly observing the laws or rules of the harmonic art. The instrumental mulic being fit only for pleafure, as before-faid, and not having occasion of fome greatest performance, as the vocal mufic, confequently it requires not a fupreme tkill in the harmonic art; the more fimple it is composed, the better it pleases the public. A good melody, carried in four, or not more than five real parts, makes a better effect than full harmony, in which must necessfarily be employed a prodigious quantity of performers for its good effect. The harmonic progression of an allegro, when it is the more simple and natural, is best received by the public, as may be observed in the compositions of many of the best authors. The allegro, and also all quick movements, are not capable of uncommon combination of founds, as those which by Italians are called acciacatures, these may better ferve in the grave and flow movements. All melody allegro, grave, or pathetic, may be partaking a little of the tafte of those which ferve for dances, and those are the most pleafant to the public; as for example, the movements of jig, borree, correntes, for the brifk and lively; of ficilianes farabandas for the adagio, or affetuolo; and of minuettos for the allegro gratiofo. Here must be remembred what has been before-mentioned in regard of the divers terms added to the compositions, and particularly of the term allegro, which generally is very little underftood, being confidered as of quick and lively movement, but is very different; this term allegro regards the manner of expressing the notes, but not to the measure of the time; and when the faid term allegro is only put, it must be underftood as in common time, or, as it is called by the Italians, a giusto time, with the expression merry, but not brisk : The same of the other terms, as gratiolo, amoroso, vivace, fpiritofo, andante, and fuch other like, all which regard only the expression of music; only the term prefto, and adagio, and giusto time, regard the measure of time; and the term grave regards both for the expression and time, as adagio with an expression grave. It must also be observed, that the instrumental music may be performed not only for public or private diversion, but also in the church, as betwixt some pfalms, or other vocal performances; in which cafe the inftrumental must be composed in the test proper to the decorum of the facred place: For doing this it will be useful to look into the compositions of those authors who have composed concertos and sonates proper for the church: It must alfo be observed, that the instrumental music for churches may be composed with a greater and more full harmony, being most proper for the grave and majestic, which is indispensible in all churches. But this is not proper when the mufic is not defined for churches. The more fimple mufic, with a pleafant melody, as before-mentioned, is always the best for public and particular diversions, conforming to what may please the public, which ordinarily are ignorant of the harmonic art; and notwithstanding all pretend to be not only. lovers of mulic, but also connoisseurs therein, it frequently happens, that the learned and acquainted with the fame art, which are generally the leffer number of the affembly, find themfelves obliged to follow the greatest part of the audience.

### ARTICLE IV. Of local Music; and, first, of facred Music.

THE Composition of music must be always done not only according to the quantity and ability of the performers, and to the genius and general taste of the country, but also to the propriety of the different places where it is to be performed, as church, heroic, and comic theatrical music, and chamber music, which are all comprehended under the title of local music. Every one of the above kinds of music have some different peculiar rules to be observed, besides the common rules of harmony:

104

Sacred mufic in the greatest churches, particularly of the Roman and Ambrofian communion in Italy and in Germany, as metropolitans, cathedrals, and colleges, is commonly divided in ferial or coral, in fimple and double feftivals and folemn. The coral or ferial in fimple canto fermo, as it is called, is performed on every common day called ferie, by all the affiftants to the great choir of the church, as canons, chaplains, and prebendaries. The fimple feftival is fo called, when on fome ferial day happens the commemoration of a common faint; and the prayers, pfalms, &c. are fung partly by the affiftants of the great choir, as above, in canto fermo, and partly by mulicians in canto Gregoriano harmonized, in three, four, or more parts. The double feftival is performed in figured mulic, almost all the prayers by muficians, with the addition of one motteto for one, two, or more voices, in commemoration of the particular faint; and the folemn mufic is practifed in almost all the churches on the occasion of some particular great feast, as for thanksgiving to the Almighty with a folemn Te Deum, being a devout and religious cuftom for fome public remarkable fuccefs, or for the dedication and confectation of the church, or on fome other great occasions, in which the composition and performance of music is done in the most tolemn manner posible. To this great and folemn music may be added fome facred poetic compositions, commonly called oratorios, the music of which is ordinarily performed by only four, five, or fix voices, with a number of inftruments of all forts, in a majeftic manner. These oratorios are composed for a feast of some particular faint, and particularly for the folemnity of Christmas-day. These performances are continued for nine successive evenings before the day of the feaft, or for eight fucceffive evenings after the fame feaft. The composition of these kinds of music are not obliged to rigorously to keep their melody and harmony in a grave order, though very modeft and more natural; but they may be composed in a way more free and expressive, not only in the composition of the diverse recitatives, but also of airs and chorufies, which ordinarily are composed in a manner called madrigal; notwithstanding all must be regulated to the decorum of the facred place, particularly in the melody of airs, which must always be very far from the taste of the dance; except the mufic composed for the folemn day of Christmas, and its novenes or octaves, in which may be introduced fome fong, air or choruses, composed with the melodies in imitation of fome dances commonly played by bagpipes, as it is generally the cuftom in Roman churches, expreffing in that manner the mirth and chearfulnefs of the shepherds in receiving the annuntiation of the nativity of the Mefliah, and by this remembrance a particular devotion is promoted in the congregation.

The particular rules for the application of the harmony convenient to the church, feem that by the fame name of church mufic, there may be enough explained, and by all composers be well understood. Every one knows that the church music is imployed in finging hymns and pfalms to the Almighty, begging help, grace, pardon, &c. for all the congregation, confequently mufic being as a deputed orator, must be correspondent to the above ends, and at the fame time proper for promoting an humble affurance and devout hope, with a perfect contrition among the congregated faithful. All this must be always prefent to the composer in composing church music, choosing the properest harmony to be applyed to the divers fignifications of hymns, pfalms, &c. which harmony, as before-faid, must always be grave, but humble and modest; therefore the combination of founds must be the more natural, also the progression or modulation, without waving from one scale or mode to another, but only paffing by the more natural scales, and not frequently; avoiding in this manner all ftrong expressions, being directly contrary to the modesty, the humility, and to the neceffary reverence of the facred place; and as the principal rule of all abovementioned, not only the fense of the words, but also their pronunciation, must be clearly and diffinctly perceived, this rule belonging in common to the composers and the fingers, which in this particular the fimple fucceffive notes must not be altered, but clearly pronounced, and in the best but simple manner in regard to the expression of the words, without flourishing graces, which are all impertinent and indecent in facred mufic: But this rule is the most neglected both by the fingers as well as the composers; every one is possessed with an itching humour of displaying his good taste, the masters in their compositions, and the performers

performers in finging, without confideration to the just and easy pronunciation of the words, in a manner that the words become only subfervient to the music, when it is the music that ought to be subfervient to the words; and this is the most necessary rule in all forts of vocal music.

The mafters take care of composing the most studious and laborious pieces of music, full of fugues, imitations, contrafugues, double fugues mixed with fimple and double contrapoint, with many long contiles, or divisions, and superfluous repetitions of words and mufical paffages, but notwithftanding that the harmony may be excellent, and very well adapted to the fense of the words, yet in the same instant of being performed the same good application of the composition must be destroyed, when the pronunciation of the words is confounded by three, four, or more voices, by which every one pronounces different fyllables and words. This is the greatest and most scandalous error which has been in vogue from the fifteenth century to this very day. The practice of fimple and double contrapoint, with all kinds of fugues, canons, &c. are not only the best, but also the neceffary means to attain the perfect knowledge of all forts of combinations of founds, and their different progressions, as mentioned before; and the above fugues, imitations, &c. may be practifed in public by the inftrumental mufic; but generally for the vocal, as effecially in facred mufic, all the above forts of compositions feem to be very improper and indecent, for the reason of the great difficulty of making them without confounding the words. Sometimes the fugues and initations may be used in the word Amen, or Allelujah, because all the sense is comprised in one simple word, consequently it is understood by the first pronunciation; but care must be taken to keep short the subject and its progression, avoiding always the repetition of the fame word as much as poffible, alfo the long contilenes or divisions, composed and performed for and by a simple vowel, both these insignificant repetitions and long contilenes being very indecent and irreverent in facred mulic. The repetition of words becomes fometimes proper for a greater expression, particularly in begging pardon, grace, or for fome admirations of the divine providence, but must be used very difcreetly. All these faults will furely be avoided if the master in composing facred music will imagine himfelf to be prefent before God, as a profound humble supplicant, praying for grace, or forgiveness of his fins, or other like, conformable to the words to be harmonized; and in this manner he will find the propereft expressions from the general combination of founds, and their progression to be applied in every fort of church music, particularly for the choruses, which for the best, must be syllabic, all performers singing and pronouncing the fame fyllables, which performers may be divided into two, or four churches, when they are enough for a folemn mufic : From this division, the two or four choruses finging fometimes all together, and fometimes alternately, in the order of their chorufes, arifes fome variety, which may be also adapted to the fense of the words: Moreover there may be composed, in the middle of some choruses, a verse for eight or ten singers, all singing together at the unifons, as fupranos or contraltos, in a little chorus, accompanied with the organ at the unifon of the voices, or with the immoveable fundamental bass in the pedal; without other accord, ferving for keeping in tone the voices, which is extremely pleafant, when it is in a proper place; and when the vocal is joined with the inftrumental, a greater diverfity may be introduced by fome divers melody for the inftrumental not conformable to that of the vocal, as fome fugues, or immitations to be performed by the inftrumental for the fame time that all the finging parts proceed with their fyllabic harmony; which manner makes an admirable effect, as I have observed in a solemn composition of a credo performed by a great number of fingers, and all forts of inftruments, in which performance all inftruments playing a proper melody in fugue in fix real parts, accompanying in this manner the fyllabic harmony of the fingers till the verse passes fub Pontio Pilato; for which was changed the first harmony, and a grave one, and very pathetic was adapted, and after in the following article the refurrexit, was repeated the first subject in the fame manner of the beginning by all choruses, and continued to the end; and was all performed in a very little time, being deprived of all unmeaning repetitions, and tirefome contilenes or divisions.

ARTICLE

#### Of the COMPOSITION of MUSIC.

#### ARTICLE V. Of Theatrical Heroic Music.

Theatrical performances have been introduced for representing to the public, and exalting with praifes, the heroic actions of fome great man, and by this means to ftimulate the audience, and particularly the young people, to a ftrong love of virtue and noble actions; confequently the theatre was formerly a pleafant and diverting fchool of morals. But this school has been drawn very far from its original design. The cause of this alteration is not fo eafy to determine. It may be supposed that the inconstancy of time, which continually metamorphofes every thing, has changed the first fettlement of virtue (modeftly speaking) in a simple divertisement: But that is a general cause, which comprehends many others immediate and particular; the principal of which feems to be the infipidity of the very fame performance, which alfo may be derived from other caufes, as from the particular negligence or ignorance of the composers of poetry or mulic; it being evident, that without a good and proper piece of poetry a moving mufic cannot be done; and the most excellent piece of poetry may be destroyed by a bad composition of music: Also the difficulty of uniting a proper company of good actors and fingers, which is the caufe that in an opera composed by a perfect master scarce is to be found a moving air or recitativo; to which may be added the little recompence done to the compofers, being ordinarily an inferior actor preferred to the composer. All the above chain of caufes have changed theatrical performances from their first institution into a simple cover to many other diversions, confequently is not now any more the cafe of composing a perfect moving piece of mufic. Therefore the composer of mufic has nothing more to do, than to look over the poetic piece to be let to mufic, and to take an exact information of the abilities of the actors in their manner of finging and acting, for composing the mulic proper to their particular abilities. The mafter, in composing the music, must remember that it is to be performed by memory, confequently the melody of the airs, also the recitativo, or recital pieces, must be cafy, particularly in their progressions or modulations, passing into the more natural scales, relative to the principal, chusing the melody most appropriated to the fense of the words, and particularly the most capable of a clear and distinct pronunciation of their syllables. The invention of the melody to the different airs must be varied one from another, but always in a manner fuitable to the fense of the words; and in respect to the recital part, it must be done in an acurate manner, as in speaking, but finging; which recitativos must also be varied one from the other, in a manner that when the fame accord of founds happen to be repeated, it must be inverted in another manner, the hearing often an accord falling in a like manner, as many composers do, without regard to the neceflary variety of the mufic being very difagreeable: Alfo the end of all recitativos muft be conformable to the scale of the following air, when its sense has relation to the antecedent recitativo. But when the air, as it fometime happens, changes the fenfe of the words from allegro to pathetic, or, vice versa, may be passed in a stranger scale, but proper to the expression of the words, notwithstanding that the scale may be improper to the antecedent scale of the recitativo, observing always (as before-faid) to give the proper expression with the composition of the music, but in an easy manner, not only for fake of the memory, but also because the greater expression must be compleated by the action of the finger, which action may be leffened when the finger is obliged to be attentive to a hard piece of mufic. Also it must be observed in composing airs of some special passions, always to chuse the best actor when possible; because very often the composer is obliged to give the part of the greater expression to a bad actor for being the best finger, or for being protected by some gentleman of authority; and this is another cause of the just negligence of the composers, who will not undertake an unfruitful trouble; it being evident that expression only may change the best music into one very bad; but a proper music, when it is well expressed, produces a wonderful good effect, as I have observed on divers occasions, and particularly in the opera called La Merope, fet to mufic the first time in Italy by the famous Galparina, where in one' recitativo without inftruments, fung by Mcrope and her ion,

fon, which with a feigned name, appearing as a ftranger meffenger to give the falle account of having feen his fon affaffinated, and before he expired, having prayed him to kifs, in his name, the hand of the queen *Merope* his mother, to this purpole, being come to the court : But fhe, from fome internal emotion, by which fhe was furprized at the first feeing him, fuppofing her own fon a long time dead, and confequently her fame prefent fon a ftranger, and the affaffin of him. This recitativo was full of interrogations, redargutions, exclamations, and other like fort of moving and ftrong expressions, with the music and the action fo well adapted, that the crouded affembly were all so affected as to so field tears. Here, in *London*, in the opera of *Coriolanus*, the music composed by *Attilio Ariosti*, at the fcene of the prison, performed by *Senefina*, all the affembly was absorbed in extreme attention and profound filence. Therefore it is evident, that theatrical performances may be reflored to its first inftitution by the contrary means by which it was destroyed, namely, by a good piece of poetry, expressive music, and proper actors.

## ARTICLE VI. Of Theatrical Comic Music.

T HE comic mufic was formerly introduced between the theatrical ferious heroic mufic, as for a little merry diversion. It was performed by a comic finger, as fellow-fervant to one of the principal parts. Now this ufe is paft, and instead of it, there has been introduced fome comical compositions performed by two fingers, as before, for diversion, betwixt the feveral acts of the heroic opera; and these comical compositions are called intermedia, which contains fome ridiculous and merry subjects, totally separated from the principal subject of the whole opera. This comical mufic must be very easy, and not obliged to the rigorous measure of time, to the end, that the fingers in charging their proper action, and the expressions of the words, may move the spectators to laughter. The invention of the melody must be proper for it. Not all composers have a proper taste for this kind of music : One may be excellent in all other branches of vocal music; but in comic music his imagination cannot subministrate to him an adequate invention to the comical subject; therefore, the looking into fome of these forts of compositions will be of good use, and of better use in framing them, when it is possible, that will fuggess to his own imagination fome like inventions.

### ARTICLE VII. Of Chamber Music.

THE chamber mufic may be diftinguished in three different forts, namely, vocal, with inftruments, and vocal, without inftruments, and fimple inftrumental.

The vocal compositions, with inftruments, are near the fame as the oratorios; only the melody is not fubjected to neceffary local devotion and reverence; also the harmony, particularly in the recitative part, which must be very expressive, and much varied, and confequently it is more liberty to the composer, who may display their good tafte without being perplexed by particular rules. This fort of mufic is ordinarily called, in Italian, ferenate, confisting of fix, eight, or more airs, with recitativoes, performed by four, five, or fix of the best fingers, accompanied by many of the best and properest forts of instruments, and are performed in fome great houfes, as of kings, princes, and eminent lords, and ordinarily, in fummer time, in the gardens (from whence is derived the name of ferenata, as played in an open ferene place) on occasion of fome nativity, or marriage of princeffes and great lords, or other folemn rejoicing. The composition must be very majestic, but merry, and with the best and greatest, or full harmony. The majesty of the composion may be expressed by the vocal parts, particularly in the different melodic choruses; and the melody of the inftrument may be merry, with flourishing and diminished notes, or with different fubjects united to the vocal melody, or by way of contract in the best manner, all applicable to the fenfe and pronunciation of the words, taking care that the inftrumental may not deftroy, but help the vocal in the expression of the words, and their syllables; this being a general

Chap. III.

general and indifpenfable rule for all the vocal mufic joined with the inftrumental. In regard of the recitative, when the vocal part cannot be affifted by the inftrumental in the expression of the fense, as ordinarily happens, in this case the composer must give all the more moving expression in the composition of the vocal with the properess and most moving harmonic combinations of sounds in their proper progression, by which the finger may have the best expression.

The fimple vocal without inftruments is only used in Italy, and very feldom in other countries; and it is used in some particular affemblies of lords and ladies, who pass the long winter evenings in finging fome cantatas or duettos, only with the harpfichord and violoncello, when the reft of the affembly pais the time in playing at cards or otherwife. These cantatas are performed only by the ladies of quality, and sometimes by some young lords, in which affembly are not admitted the professors of music, but only some stranger of the best fort, and that but very feldom. This simple vocal music is of the best fort, composed by the best poets, and masters of music; and sometimes by the same lords the poetry and music, or also the music by the ladies, among whom are many not only excellent fingers, but also composers. These fort of compositions being deprived of the help of the inftrumental, and of all action, confequently there must be used all the most expreffive combinations, and propereft progressions, in composing not only the recitative part, but also the airs; the melody of which must be extremely proper to the sense of the words: The bass for the violoncello, when it is separated from that of the harpsichord, must be composed in the best and most melodious manner, by imitation, or some different melody, proper to help the expression of the vocal part : The harmony of the harpfichord, particularly in pathetic airs and recitativos, must be in as full combination as possible, with its accicaturas, more proper for the strongest expression. These cantatas are very studious, and give the greatest pleasure with their moving affections: But in some ordinary cantatas, a voice fola, composed by an indifferent poetic style, the music cannot be of the moving fort, but only proper to the infignificant fense of the poetry; and these fort of cantatas are those which commonly run in every country, but the best fort very feldom, because the perfons keep them zealoufly close for their own ufe.

The fimple inftrumental chamber mulic comprehends all forts of inftrumental mulic, and fometimes intermixed with fome favourite air or fong of fome opera; and this happens in almost all the countries of *Europe*, and it is often performed in public affemblies; excepting in *Italy*, where all forts of chamber mulic are performed in private, and in those particular affemblies of young gentlemen, where the inftrumental mulic is practifed for pleasure and for practice, every one, who is capable of composing, exposes their mulical compositions, which are almost all composed for the violino, flute, or oboe folo, or in concertos with a principal inftrumental part accompanied by the other inftruments; and never, or very feldom, is performed any printed mulic, excepting fome concertos, when they newly appear in public, every affembly being provided with many particular manuscript mulic.

The inftrumental mufic is only fubject to the general rules of harmony, and to that of pleafing, and the beft are those which pleafes the most and are best approved by the public.

These are all the particular rules which may belong to the different vocal, instrumental, and local music, as are expressed in the articles of the present last chapter, which puts an end to the whole treatife of the harmonic art, or composition of music.

FINIS.

